The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd., reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Accessories Precautions
The GPS antenna is located in the roof. Trees, tall buildings, freeway/highway overpasses, tunnels, or overhead electrical power wires can easily interrupt or interfere with GPS reception.

Signal noise from devices such as radar detectors, vehicle tracking devices, remote starters, and additional amplifiers can disrupt the navigation system. If you install any such item, install it away from the navigation display and antenna.

Important Safety Information

⚠️ WARNING

Using the navigation system while driving can take your attention away from the road, causing a crash in which you could be seriously injured or killed.

Only operate system controls when the conditions permit you to safely do so.

Avoid focusing on the screen or manually operating the system controls while driving.

Enter information before you begin driving or when stopped. As you drive, listen to the audible instructions and use voice commands when possible. Pull to the side of the road if you need more time to look at the screen or operate the controls.

Route guidance may conflict with street closures, road construction, detours, and out-of-date map data.

The system itself may also have limitations. Verify route information by carefully observing roads, signs, and signals. Always use your own judgment and obey traffic laws.

🌟 System Limitations P. 402

NOTICE

This vehicle's navigation system display, if so equipped, includes mercury-containing components. Upon removal, please reuse, recycle, or dispose of as hazardous waste. Clean the screen with a soft, damp cloth. You may use a mild cleaner intended for use on the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
Overview—Functions at a Glance

Navigation
You can select any place/landmark as a destination by using voice control or the Interface Dial. The navigation system gives you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

- **Store home address** [P.48]
  Register 1 home address.
- **Store contacts** [P.41]
  Store up to 200 contacts in 2 address books.
- **Enter destination** [P.126]
  Select your destination using 13 methods.
- **Select route** [P.153]
  Set route preferences and select one of 3 routes.

- **Track route** [P.154]
  Follow your route in real-time with voice guidance.
  - U.S. models
    - **Traffic Information** [1] [P.165]
      View and avoid congestion and traffic incidents.
      *1: Available only in certain areas.
  - Canadian models
    - **Subscription service**
      **AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic™** [P.165]
      Bypass congestion and traffic incidents.
- **Avoid certain areas** [P.62]
  Set streets and areas to detour around.
- **Add waypoints** [P.170]
  Add up to 4 “pit stops” along your route.
Audio

The advanced audio system provides clear, well-defined sound and makes the most of your music. Enjoy listening to a variety of audio sources, such as:

- FM/AM Radio (P. 194)
- SiriusXM® Radio (P. 200)
- Compact Disc (P. 220)
- Hard Disc Drive (HDD) (P. 227)
- iPod (P. 239)
- Internet Radio (P. 251)
- USB Flash Drive (P. 256)
- Bluetooth® Audio (P. 262)

AcuraLink® (P. 314)

AcuraLink® provides you with important information and messages between your vehicle and Acura.

Voice Control (P. 24)

Use voice commands for safer system control while driving. You can operate all key functions of the navigation, audio, Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®, and climate control systems.

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (P. 266)

Pair a compatible mobile phone to receive incoming and make outgoing calls. You can operate the phone features without ever taking your hands off the wheel.

Rear Entertainment System* (P. 325)

Rear seat passengers can enjoy a completely separate entertainment source than front passengers, including movies, games, and other audio choices.

* Not available on all models
System Controls

Audio/Information Screen

1 PHONE Button  P.266
2 (Power) Button
3 Volume Knob
4 NAV Button
5 BACK Button
6 (Display Mode) Button  P.76
7 Interface Dial/ENTER Button  P.7
8 INFO Button
9 MENU Button
10 SETTINGS Button

Models with Surround View Camera System
11 CAMERA Button

Models with RES
12 FRONT AUDIO Button  P.329
13 REAR AUDIO Button  P.329
14 REAR (Power) Button
15 (Eject) Button

Models without RES
16 Microphone  P.266
17 Left Selector Wheel  P.188
18 SOURCE Button  P.188
19 (Pick-Up) Button  P.266
20 (Hang-Up/Back) Button  P.266
21 (Talk) Button  P.6
22 AUDIO Button  P.182

Navigation
Voice Control
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®
Rear Entertainment System
Audio
On Demand Multi-Use Display™ Basic Operation

**Source**
Select to change an audio source.

You can change the position of icons.

**Shortcuts**
Select to display the shortcut menu.

**More**
Select to display the menu items.

Select and hold a desired number where you want to store the station/channel.
Select to listen to a preset station/channel.

**FM/AM/SiriusXM®/Pandora®/AhaTM**
- Select the preset station (FM/AM/Pandora®/Aha).
- Select to search that category/channel on the tune screen (SiriusXM®).
- Select and hold to search that station/channel on the preset screen (AM/FM/SiriusXM®).
- Select and hold to search up or down 10 channels on the tune screen (SiriusXM®).
- Select an album.

**CD/HDD/USB flash drive/Bluetooth® Audio**
- Select to change tracks. Select and hold to move rapidly within a track.

**iPod**
- Select an album.

*Not available on all models*
Voice Control Operation

Voice Portal Screen

1. Press and release the \( \text{[Talk]} \) button on the top screen of any mode. The system prompts you to say a voice command and gives examples. Press and release the \( \text{[Talk]} \) button again to bypass this prompt.

- The system beeps when ready for a command. Press the \( \text{(Hang-Up/Back)} \) button to cancel.
- Available voice commands are highlighted on the screen.

2. Say a voice command. After that follow the voice prompt and say a voice command.

- The audio system is muted during voice control mode.
- You can use other voice commands on the Voice Portal screen. The system recognizes only certain commands.
- Available navigation voice commands \( \Rightarrow \) P.414
- Say \( \text{[Voice Help]} \) “Voice Help” to enter supported commands for the current screen. A voice help tutorial is also available. Voice Help \( \Rightarrow \) P.17
- During the voice control mode, press and hold the \( \text{(Hang-Up/Back)} \) button to return to the Voice Portal screen.
- Set Voice Prompt to Off to bypass the voice prompt. Voice Recognition Settings \( \Rightarrow \) P.26
- Carefully read the usage note for the voice control. Voice Control System \( \Rightarrow \) P.24
Interface Dial/ENTER Button Operation

You will see these icons in each chapter. They represent how you can operate the Interface Dial.

- **Rotate dial**
  - Changes scale
  - Map screens

- **Press ENTER**
  - Selects function
  - Selects map icon
  - Map screens

- **Move**
  - up
  - down
  - left
  - right
  - Scrolls map (8 directions)
  - Map screens

- **Selecting Icon**
  - You will see these icons in each chapter.
  - They represent how you can operate the Interface Dial.

- **Selects highlighted option**
  - Menu screens

- **Move up**
  - Move left
  - Move down
  - Move right
  - Selects labeled function
  - Menu screens
How to Enter Information

You can enter information (e.g. city names, street names, personal names, business names comprising letters, numbers, and symbols) when prompted on the input screen.

Using the Interface Dial

Rotate \( \circ \) to highlight a character.
- Select \( \uparrow \) to display upper/lower case characters.
- Select \( \uparrow \) to display symbols and accented characters.
- Select \( \text{Edit} \) (or move \( \uparrow \)) to edit the entered characters.

Press \( \downarrow \) to enter the highlighted character.
- Move \( \text{Select} \) to select \text{Space} to enter a space character.
- Move \( \text{Select} \) to select \text{Delete} to remove the last entered character.

You can also use the touchscreen to enter information.

U.S. models

Certain screen functions are limited or inoperable while the vehicle is moving. For these functions, use available voice commands or pull over to proceed.

Canadian models

Certain screen functions are limited or inoperable while the vehicle is moving.
Map Screen Legend

- **Map orientation**: P.78
- **AcuraLink® Message icon**: P.15
- **AcuraLink® signal indicator**: P.324
- **Landmark icons**: P.73
- **Streets**
  - Freeway/highway
  - State route
  - Road
  - Unverified road
  - Scenic road
  - Pedestrian street
  - State line
  - One-way

- **GPS signal strength**
  - Best reception
  - Good reception
  - No icon: Poor/No reception

- **Current map scale**
  - 1/20mi

- **Map scale**: P.83

- **Feature areas**
  - Park
  - Hospital
  - Cemetery
  - Shopping Mall
  - University
  - Golf Course
  - Industrial complex
  - Airport
  - Military Base

- **Current vehicle position**
  - Current street name
  - North up
  - Heading up
  - 3D map

- **Current street name**: P.81

- **North up**

- **Heading up**

- **3D map**
Traffic Information*/AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic*
Displays continuously updated traffic information and recalculates your route in response to traffic flow, incidents, or road closures. Traffic information is only available in certain areas. ➤ P. 165

Traffic incident icons
- Congestion
- Incident
- Weather
- Construction
- Road Closed

Traffic status indicator
- Traffic information available
- Traffic information off or map scale too large
- No icon: Out of coverage area

Traffic flow indicator
- Heavy
- Moderate
- Free-flow

NOTE: AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic is a subscription service. For more information, contact an Acura dealer or visit www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink.
During Route Guidance

During route guidance, route information is displayed on the map screen and guidance screen. Press the NAV button to toggle between the map and guidance screen.

**Map Screen**

- Tracking dots
- Guide to destination or waypoint
- Estimated time to destination (waypoint)
- Distance to destination (waypoint)
- Distance of the actual route.

**Guidance Screen**

- Guidance point
- Guide to destination or waypoint
- Estimated time to destination (waypoint)
- Distance to destination (waypoint)
- Distance of the actual route.

**Day or Night Mode**

Press the (Display Mode) button to manually switch between day and night mode.

**Turn-by-Turn Directions**

The next guidance point appears on the multi-information display.

- Remaining distance
- Street name of next guidance point
- Next driving maneuver is approaching

* Not available on all models
Navigation—Home Addresses and Going Home

The “Home” feature automatically routes you to your home address from any location simply by selecting Go Home.

**Storing Your Home Address**

1. Press the SETTINGS button.

2. Rotate to select Navi Settings. Press .


4. Rotate to select Name. Press .

5. Enter a name.

6. Rotate to select Address. Press .

7. Enter an address.

8. Rotate to select Phone No. Press .

9. Enter a phone number.

10. Move and rotate to select OK. Press .

**Going Home**

1. From the map screen, press the MENU button.

2. Rotate to select Go Home. Press .

3. Rotate to select Set as Destination. Press .

4. Enter a phone number.
Navigation—Entering a Destination

Enter your destination using one of several methods, then follow route guidance on the map or guidance screen to your destination.

1. From the map screen, press the MENU button.

2. Rotate  to select Address. Press .

3. Rotate  to select Street. Press .

4. Enter the name of your destination street.

5. Rotate  to select your destination street from the list. Press .

6. Enter the street number. Move  to select OK when finished.

7. If there is more than one city with the specified street, a list of cities is displayed. Rotate  to select the desired city from the list. Press .

8. Rotate  to select Set as Destination. Press . Route guidance to the destination begins.

- View Routes: Choose one of three routes.

- Route Preference: Choose Max or Min for the five settings.
Navigation—Changing Route or Destination
You can alter your route by adding waypoints to visit, adding streets to avoid, or changing your destination during route guidance.

Adding a Waypoint (“Pit Stop”)
You can add up to four waypoints along your route.  

1. From the map screen, press the MENU button.
2. Rotate to select Destination List. Press .
3. Rotate to select Add New Destination. Press .
4. Rotate to select Find Along Route. Press .
5. Rotate to select location and search method. Press .

   - Search Around: Search around a location.
   - Search Along: Search between two locations.

6. Select the icon category and location to add to the Destination List when prompted. Edit the order of destinations if necessary.
7. Move and rotate to select Start Route. Press .

Changing Your Destination
There are several methods you can use to specify a new destination during route guidance.

- Selecting an icon on the map  
  Scroll the map to position the cursor over a place/landmark icon or a new area on the map. Press twice.
- Entering a new destination  
  Press the MENU button. Move to select Destination and enter a new destination.

Canceling Your Route

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Rotate to select Cancel Route. Press .
AcuraLink®

**AcuraLink® Messages**

AcuraLink® provides a direct communication link between you and Acura. It sends and receives several kinds of messages through the Acura server.

![AcuraLink messages](image)

The following features are available:

- Vehicle feature guide
- Operating quick tips
- Safety and maintenance information
- Diagnostic information
- Dealer appointment and maintenance reminders
Rear Entertainment System*

The rear passengers can enjoy a wide array of audio/visual sources with the Rear Entertainment System (RES). The rear passengers can use wireless headphones and operate the system with the rear control panel.

**Overhead Screen and Rear Control Panel**

Press the Open button to open and pull down the screen.

Press the Release button to remove the rear control panel.

Select the audio source.

Rotate the Interface Dial to select items.

**Basic Operation**

1. Open the overhead screen.

2. Press the REAR (Power) button on the front control panel.

3. Select the audio source. Press the SOURCE button and rotate the Interface Dial on the rear control panel to select an audio source. Press the ENTER button.

**Buttons and Functions**

- **(Power) Button**
  Turn the system on or off (when rear power is turned on).

- **(Light-up) Button**
  Illuminate the buttons on the rear control panel.

- **CH/FOLDER Bar**
  Select a channel (Radio) or a folder (Disc/USB).

- **TUNE/SKIP Bar**
  Find stations (FM/AM). Skip to the start/end of tracks or press and hold to fast reverse/fast forward (Disc/USB).

- **CATEGORY Bar**
  Select a category (SiriusXM®).

- **(Play/Pause) Button**
  Play or pause the playback.

- **TITLE SCROLL Button**
  Display track title, artist, and other text information.
**Voice Help**

This navigation system comes with voice help, which shows you what command to say when using the voice command functions.

### Command Help

1. **Press and release the **Talk** (Talk) button.**

   ![Voice Help Screen](Image)

   The voice help screen is displayed. The "Voice Help" command is available on most screens.

2. **Say "Voice Help".**

   ![Voice Help Screen](Image)

   The system displays a list of all available commands for the category. Press to hear the list read aloud.

3. **Say one of the options for a list of available commands by category (e.g., "Navigation Commands").**

   ![Voice Help Screen](Image)

   "Voice Help" is available on most screens.

### Getting Started Tutorial

1. **Move and rotate to select "Getting Started" on the voice help screen. Press .**

   ![Getting Started](Image)

   For "Voice Settings" and "All Commands." P.26, 414

2. **The system reads the tips for the voice control.**

   - Rotate to read the tips.
   - Move to display the previous/next page.

* Not available on all models
Troubleshooting

Why does the vehicle position icon on the map “lag” a short distance behind my actual position, especially at intersections?

This is normal. The navigation system is unaware of the width of intersections. Large differences in vehicle position can indicate a temporary loss of the GPS signal.

Why does the “time to destination” display sometimes increase even though I am getting closer to my destination?

The “time to destination” is based on your actual road speed and traffic conditions to give you a better estimate of arrival time.

How do I specify a destination when an entered city or street could not be found?

Try entering the street first. Some cities are lumped in with a major metro area. In rural “unverified” areas or new subdivisions, streets may be missing or only partially numbered.

How do I turn on the navigation system voice guidance?

On the map screen, press 🎧 to display the Map Menu. Rotate 🅽 to select Guidance Volume. Adjust it to the preferred volume level.

My battery was disconnected or went dead and the navigation system is asking for a code. Where do I find it?

In most cases you do not need to enter a code. Simply press and hold the 🍁 (Power) button for two seconds; the system should reactivate.

System Initialization P. 400
How to Use This Manual
This section explains different methods on how you can easily find information in this manual.

Searching the Table of Contents  P.1
Two types of Tables of Contents help you find your desired information.

Table of Contents
First, find the general chapter related to what you are looking for (e.g., entering a destination from the Address Book). Then, go to that chapter to view a more specific table of contents.

Chapter Contents
This more detailed table of contents shows you exactly what information is listed by section and title.

Searching the Index  P.419
Menu items displayed on the audio/information screen (e.g., Address Book) can be found individually in the Index.

The Index consists of main terms and sub-entries. The sub-entries help you get to the desired page depending on what you are looking for.
The menu tree helps guide you through the system's menu options. To get to your desired function, follow the menu tree in order of the steps shown.

All menu options can also be activated with voice commands.
System Setup

This section describes the start-up procedure and the navigation and setup functions.
Start-up

The navigation system starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following Confirmation screen is displayed.

1. Press \( \text{OK} \) to select OK.
   - If you do not select OK, the map screen is displayed after a certain period of time.
   - Your current position is displayed on the map screen.

2. Press the NAV button if a different mode is selected.
   - Your current position is displayed on the map screen.

If the navigation system loses power at any time, you may need to press and hold the \( \text{(Power)} \) button for more than two seconds, or you may be prompted for the five-digit security code.

At start-up, the driver’s keyless access remote is automatically detected and the address book settings, setup preferences, wallpapers, and audio settings for that driver (e.g., Driver 1) are loaded.

“OK” on the Confirmation screen cannot be selected by using a voice command.

The first time the NAV or any other mode button is pressed after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON, a message guiding you to its menu screen is displayed.
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion.

**U.S. models**
You cannot select a grayed-out option using the Interface Dial until the vehicle is stopped.
Voice commands are still operable while the vehicle is in motion.
Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation for most of the navigation system functions. The voice control system uses the \( \text{Talk} \) and \( \text{Hang-Up/Back} \) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling. A “Getting Started” feature provides a tutorial that explains how to use the voice control system.

Voice Control System

Command Input

If the system does not understand a command or you wait too long to give a command, the system asks you to repeat the command. When you give a command, the system generally either repeats the command as a confirmation or asks you for further information. If you do not wish to hear this feedback, you can turn it off. However, listening to the feedback will help familiarize you with the way the system expects commands to be phrased.

If the system cannot perform a command or the command is not appropriate for the screen you are on, the system beeps.

On character input screens, a list of possible characters is displayed if the system does not recognize your command.

You can find out which voice commands are available for a particular screen using the \( \text{Voice Help} \) command. The system will display and read the list of available commands to you.
Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the navigation voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognizes only certain commands. Available navigation voice command.
  
  ‣ Voice Commands P. 414

- Close the windows and moonroof.

- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.

- Speak in a clear, natural speaking voice without pausing between words.

- Reduce any background noise and the climate controls fan speed if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

- Refer to the Voice Help feature.
  ‣ Voice Help P. 17

Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver’s seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger’s side.
Voice Recognition Settings

The following items are available:

- **Voice Prompt**: Turns the voice prompt on or off.
  - On (factory default): Provides the voice prompts.
  - Off: Disables the feature.

- **Song By Voice**: Turns the Song By Voice™ on or off.
  - **Settings Song By Voice™ (SBV)** P. 246

- **Song By Voice Phonetic Modification**: Modifies a voice command of music stored in the HDD or an iPod.
  - **Phonetic Modification** P. 248

- **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**: Modifies a voice command for the phonebook.
  - **Phonebook Phonetic Modification** P. 282

- **Guidance Volume**: Adjusts the voice prompt volume level.
  - **Sound and Beep Settings** P. 29
Siri Eyes Free

When your compatible iPhone is paired and linked to the system via Bluetooth®, you can say Siri-related commands. Make sure the Siri feature on your iPhone is turned on.

Pairing a Phone  P. 269

1. Press and hold the (Talk) button for more than two seconds until you hear the Siri tone.
2. Talk to Siri.
   - When you hear the Siri tone, you can continue to respond without pressing any button. If the Siri tone times out, you have to press and hold the (Talk) button again to reactivate Siri Eyes Free.
   - Press the (Hang-Up/Back) button to cancel Siri Eyes Free.

iPhone and Siri are trademarks of Apple, Inc.

Siri Eyes Free is available only on iPhone with iOS 6.0 and above.

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Some features may not be available for all countries or all areas. For details about Siri, refer to http://www.apple.com.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Eyes Free mode while operating a vehicle.

On Siri Eyes Free, the display remains the same and no feedback or commands appear.

While using Siri, you cannot operate the system with the built-in voice recognition.
Display Settings

1. Rotate ⧨ to select an item. Press ⧨.
2. Rotate ⧨ to make the adjustment. Press ⧨.

The following items are available:

- **Sync Display Brightness**: Selects whether the display brightness synchronizes with the instrument panel brightness.
- **Brightness**: Adjusts the screen’s brightness.
- **Contrast**: Adjusts the screen’s contrast.
- **Black Level**: Adjusts the screen’s black level.

You can set separate daytime and nighttime settings for **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and **Black Level**. Adjust each setting when the display is in either daytime or nighttime mode.
Sound and Beep Settings

* SETTING button ➤ System Settings ➤ Sound/Beep

Changes the system sound and beep settings.

Rotate to select an item. Press .

The following items are available:
- **Guidance Volume**: Adjusts the navigation system volume level.
- **Verbal Reminder**: Turns the verbal reminders on and off.
  - **On**: Sets the verbal reminders.
  - **Off**: Disables the feature.

If you set Guidance Volume to 0, you will not hear route guidance or voice command confirmations.
You can adjust Guidance Volume by rotating the volume knob while the route guidance or voice command confirmations are announced.
If you then select Voice in the Map Menu, you will hear route guidance at the default volume.
### Clock Adjustment

#### SETTINGS button ➤ System Settings ➤ Clock

Set the automatic adjustment of the system clock for daylight saving and international time zones.

![System settings screen](image)

Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 🎉.

The following items are available:

- **Clock/Wallpaper Type**: Changes the clock display type and the wallpaper type.  
  - [Setting the Clock Type](#) P. 31
- **Clock Adjustment**: Adjust the current time manually.  
  - [Setting the Clock](#) P. 31
- **Clock Format**: Sets the time notation to either 12-hour clock (12H, factory default) or 24-hour clock (24H).
- **Auto Time Zone**: The navigation system automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.  
  - On (factory default): Adjusts the clock automatically.  
  - Off: Disables the feature.
- **Auto Daylight**: The navigation system automatically adjusts the clock ("spring ahead" or "fall back" by one hour) when a daylight saving time change occurs.  
  - On (factory default): Adjusts the clock automatically.  
  - Off: Disables the feature.
- **Clock Reset**: Resets the settings of all items in the Clock group.

### Auto Time Zone

If you live and work in two different time zones, you may want to turn **Auto Time Zone** to Off. When driving near a time zone boundary, the displayed time zone may fluctuate between the two zone times.

### Auto Daylight

This function is not activated in areas that have not adopted daylight saving time, even if you have set **Auto Daylight** to On.

You can turn the clock display in the audio/information screen on and off.

- [Header Clock Display](#) P. 39
Setting the Clock Type

1. Rotate ☺ to select an option to change the design. Press ☺.
2. Move ☹ to select OK. Press ☺.

Setting the Clock

1. Rotate ☺ to select an item. Press ☺.
2. Rotate ☹ to select a minute. Press ☺.
Wallpaper Settings

Select, delete, and import wallpaper pictures for display on the screen.

**Import Wallpaper**

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
2. Move ▶ to select **Wallpaper**. The screen will change to the wallpaper list.
3. Move ▶ and rotate ▶ to select **Add New Wallpaper**. Press ✗.
4. Rotate ▶ to select a desired picture. Press ✗. The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
5. Move ▶ and rotate ▶ to select **Start Import**. Press ✗. The confirmation message will appear. Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.

**Wallpaper Settings**

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive’s root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 255 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 10 MB.
- The maximum image size is 5,800 × 5,800 pixels.
- Up to 10 files can be saved for each driver (Driver 1 and Driver 2).
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the No files detected message appears.
Select Wallpaper

**SETTNGS button ➤ System Settings ➤ Clock ➤ Clock/Wallpaper Type ➤ Wallpaper**

1. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper. Press .
   - The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

2. Rotate to select Set. Press .
   - The display will return to the wallpaper list.

**Select Wallpaper**

From the pop-up menu, rotate to select Preview and press to see a preview at full-size screen.

To go back to the previous screen, press to select OK, or press the BACK button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Continued
Delete Wallpaper

1. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete. Press .
   - The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

2. Rotate to select Delete. Press .
   - The confirmation message will appear.

3. Rotate to select Yes. Press .
   - The display will return to the wallpaper list.
Unit Settings

SETTINGS button ➤ System Settings ➤ Others ➤ Units

Sets the map units to either mile or km.

Rotate to select the map unit.
Press .
Language Settings

Set the system language used on all screens. You can choose from three languages: English, Français (French), Español (Spanish).

Rotate 🔄 to select the system language. Press 🔄.

Voice confirmation of cities and streets only occurs when English is the system language.

When Français or Español is selected, some messages continue to be displayed in English.
Operation Restriction Tips*

* SETTING button ➤ System Settings ➤ Others ➤ Operation Restriction Tips

Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.

The following items are available:
- On (factory default): Displays a message.
- Off: Disables the message.

* Not available on all models
Interface Settings

Background Color

Settings button ▶ System Settings ▶ Others ▶ Background Color

Changes the background color of the audio/information screen and the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

Rotate to select a desired color. Press .

![System settings menu](image)
Header Clock Display

Selects whether the clock display comes on.

The following options are available:

- **On** (factory default): The system displays the clock in the audio/information screen.
- **Off**: Disables the feature.

Rotate ☯ to select an option. Press ✂.
Use the personal information menu to select and set your address books, home address, and PINs. You can also delete unwanted destinations from the list of previously routed destinations.

Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 🛎.

The following items are available:

- **Address Book**: Stores new addresses or edits your address book.
  - [Address Book](#) P. 41
- **Edit Go Home**: Sets or edits your home address.
  - [Home Address](#) P. 48
- **PIN Number**: Sets or changes your PIN.
  - [PIN Numbers](#) P. 49
- **Previous Destination**: Deletes the destination history.
  - [Previous Destination](#) P. 50
- **Category History**: Deletes the place categories you recently used.
  - [Category History](#) P. 51
- **Download POI**: Edits and deletes the Imported POI categories.
  - [Download POI](#) P. 52
Address Book

Store up to 200 address entries in two address books (Driver 1 and Driver 2). You can add, edit, and delete information in the address books.

Move < or > to display only the addresses in the selected category. Move < to change the user address book (Driver 1 or Driver 2).

Address Book

- Up to 200 addresses can be stored to each address book of Driver 1 and Driver 2 separately.
- If you have PIN-protected your address book, enter your PIN when prompted. Press 🆙 to select OK. PINs are optional.
- Any address book categories you create are also displayed.

Continued
Adding an Address Book Entry

SETTINGS button ► Navi Settings ► Personal Info ► Address Book

This section explains how to enter the name and address.

1. Move ● and rotate  to select Add New Address. Press .

2. Rotate ● to select an item. Press .

The following items are available:

- **Name**: Edits the name of the entry.
- **Address**: Edits the address of the entry.
- **Phone No.**: Edits the phone number of the entry.
- **Category**: Specifies the category of the entry.

If you do not give the address a name, one is automatically assigned (e.g., Address 001). You can re-enter, edit, or make changes to any entry. “Address” is the only required field.
- Alert: Alerts you when you approach the address entry.
  On: Beeps and displays a message when your vehicle gets near the entry.
  Off (factory default): Disables the feature.

3. Rotate 🔄 to select Name. Press 📥.
4. Enter a name or title. Move 🔄 to select OK.
5. Rotate 🔄 to select Address. Press 📥.
6. Rotate 🔄 to select an item for specifying the address. Press 📥.

The following items are available:
- Address: Enter an address on the character input screen when prompted.
  📥 Address P. 128
- Previous Destinations: Select a previous destination.
  📥 Previous Destination P. 136
- Current Position: Select your current location.
- Place Category: Select a category to search for a place/landmark (e.g., Banking, Lodging).
  📥 Place Category P. 137
- Local Search: Sets a destination by using Local Search.
  📥 Local Search P. 139
- Place Name: Enter the name of a place/landmark.
  📥 Place Name P. 141
- More Search Methods: Displays additional search method entries.
  📥 Entering a Destination P. 126

Adding an Address Book Entry

When you use Place Name or Place Category, the phone number is automatically entered.

You can also add a phone number and category.
Editing an Address Book Entry

1. Rotate 🔄 to select the address to edit. Press 🎉.
2. Enter the name, address, phone number, and category fields.
3. Move ⚪️ and rotate 🔄 to select OK. Press 🎉.

Adding an Address Book Entry P. 42

Creating a new category P. 45

Selecting an Address Book Category

1. Rotate 🔄 to select an address. Press 🎉.
2. Rotate 🔄 to select Category. Press 🎉.
3. Rotate 🔄 to select a category. Press 🎉.
   - Create a category in advance.

Selecting an Address Book Category

Up to 100 categories (including “Unfiled”) can be stored to each address book of Driver 1 and Driver 2 separately.

If you delete a category that is used by other addresses, the category type for those addresses changes to “Unfiled”.

The entered contents are displayed on the Edit address screen.
Creating a new category
1. Move and rotate to select New Category. Press .
2. Enter a name and select an icon when prompted.
   ▶ The created category is displayed in the list of categories.

Deleting orEditing a category
1. Move and rotate to select Delete or Edit. Press .
2. Delete an existing category, or change the name and icon.
   ▶ The selected category to delete is indicated with a trash icon. Move and rotate to select OK.

Deleting an Address Book Entry
1. Rotate to select the address to delete. Press .
2. Move and rotate to select Delete. Press .
3. Rotate to select Yes. Press to delete the address.
Setting Place Shortcuts

You can store up to six addresses previously stored in your Address Book, and a home address for your preset destinations.

Storing an address on the shortcut

1. Select Shortcuts.
2. Select Places.
3. Select Edit or No Entry.
   - If you select No Entry, go to step 6.
4. Select Add.
   - All six preset icons appear.
5. Select the preset number to which you want to store an address.
   - The screen changes to a list of addresses stored in your address book.
6. Select an address you want to store as a preset.

■ Deleting a preset address
1. Select Shortcuts.
2. Select Places.
3. Select Edit.
4. Select Delete.
5. Select the preset number with the destination you want to delete.
Home Address

If you have PIN-protected your home addresses, enter your PIN when prompted. Press \( \) to select OK. PINs are optional.

**Home Address**

If your home street is not in the system database, park on the nearest verified street to your home. When entering the “Address” field, rotate \( \) to select Current Position to use your current location as the home address and press \( \).

You can delete a home address if necessary. Move \( \) and rotate \( \) to select Clear Home Entry. Press \( \). Rotate \( \) to select Yes. Press \( \).

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, delete all home addresses.

The home icon is shown on the map screen on the 1/20 and 1/8 mile (80 and 200 m) scales.
PIN Numbers

SETTINGS button ➤ Navi Settings ➤ Personal Info ➤ PIN Number

Set a four-digit PIN for protecting personal addresses and your home address. Once you set a PIN, you are prompted to enter it whenever you access a personal address or a home address.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select the PIN to create. Press 🚸.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select a digit to enter. Press 🚸 to select OK. Repeat to enter a new four-digit PIN.

3. Re-enter the new PIN, when prompted, to confirm the number you just entered. Press 🚸 to select OK.

If you have not entered the same number both times, an “INCORRECT PIN” message is displayed. Enter your PIN again.

PIN

Personal Identification Number (PIN) is a password used to access personal data.

PINs are optional. If you choose to use a PIN, keep a note of the number in a secure location. If you forget your PIN, a dealer will have to reset the navigation system and all of your stored information will be erased. The factory default is no PIN.

If you want to stop using a PIN, move 🔄 to select Turn Off PIN Entry. Press 🚸.
Previous Destination

The navigation system maintains a list of your previously routed destinations as a shortcut for entering the same destination in the future. You can delete some or all of your previous destinations from the list.

1. Rotate to select the destination to delete. Press .
   - Repeat the procedure as necessary.
   - Items to be deleted are indicated with a trash icon.

2. Move and rotate to select OK to delete the selected destinations.

Trash icon

Up to 50 destinations can be stored.

To cancel the selection of a previous destination, rotate to highlight the destination again. Press to de-select it.
Category History

The navigation system maintains a list of your recently used place categories as a shortcut for selecting the same categories in the future. You can delete some or all of your recently used categories from the list.

1. Rotate ⬇️ to select the category to delete. Press ⬇️. 
   - Repeat the procedure as necessary.
   - Items to be deleted are indicated with a trash icon.

2. Move ⬇️ and rotate ⬇️ to select OK to delete the selected categories.

Trash icon

Category History

Up to 50 categories can be stored.

To cancel the selection of a category, rotate ⬇️ to highlight the category again. Press ⬇️ to de-select it.
Download POI

Import custom Points of Interest (POI) into the navigation system and set the POI as a destination. You can also add, edit, and delete POIs.

1. Connect a USB flash drive with stored POI data to the USB connector.
2. Move and rotate to select Import from USB. Press .

For more information about connecting a USB flash drive.

Connecting a USB Flash Drive P. 256

POI data in csv and kml formats can be imported.

You can download POI data from various POI websites.

If you select From AcuraLink, you can download POI data from the AcuraLink® server.

AcuraLink® P. 314
3. Rotate 🔄 to select a category to import. Press 🎉.

For editing POI categories:

1. Rotate 🔄 to select the downloaded POI category to edit. Press 🎉.

If you select From AcuraLink, you can edit Alert only.
2. Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 🔄.

The following items are available:
- **Alert Setting**: Alerts you when you approach the places/landmarks in the category.
  - **On**: Beeps and displays a message when your vehicle gets near the places/landmarks in the category.
  - **Off** (factory default): Disables the feature.
- **Delete Category**: Deletes all places/landmarks and icon in the selected category.
- **Edit Icon**: Changes the category icon.
Choose various settings that determine the navigation system functionality during route calculation.

The following items are available:

- **Route Preference**: Changes the route preferences (calculating method).
  - See Route Preference P. 56
- **Unverified Routing**: Sets whether you use the route guidance in unverified areas.
  - See Unverified Routing P. 58
- **Traffic Rerouting**: Sets whether you use automatic recalculation based on traffic information.
  - See Traffic Rerouting P. 60
- **Edit POI Search Radius Along Route**: Sets the distance from the route to find waypoints.
  - See Edit POI Search Radius Along Route P. 61
- **Avoided Area**: Specifies areas to avoid when calculating a route.
  - See Avoided Area P. 62

Rotate 🎮 to select an item. Press 🎮.
Route Preference

Change the route preference by selecting minimum or maximum driving methods.

1. Rotate to select an item. Press .
2. Rotate to select Min or Max. Press .
   - Repeat step 1 and 2 as necessary.
3. Move to select OK. Press.

The calculated route may be the shortest route or the route you would choose. For safety reasons, the system generally applies the following rules to your route:
- Shortcuts through residential areas are avoided.
- Right turns are favored over left turns or U-turns.
- Time-restricted turns (turns prohibited at certain times of the day) are not used.

Check the ferry schedule when the calculated route includes ferry route.

ETC is short for the Electronic Toll Collection system.

Server Route*
- You can view three routes distributed from AcuraLink®.
  - Viewing the Routes P. 153
- Set to On and select Optimal Routes to select your desired route.
  - Optimal Routes* P. 57

* Not available on all models
You can select desired routes by sorting the route list. The three top routes can be displayed on the Select a route screen.

1. Move \( \boldsymbol{\text{L}} \) and rotate \( \boldsymbol{\text{R}} \) to select Optimal Routes. Press \( \boldsymbol{\text{R}} \).
2. Rotate \( \boldsymbol{\text{R}} \) to select a route type. Press \( \boldsymbol{\text{R}} \).
3. Move \( \boldsymbol{\text{L}} \) and rotate \( \boldsymbol{\text{R}} \) to select OK. Press \( \boldsymbol{\text{R}} \).

Optimal Routes is a subscription service. For more information, contact an Acura dealer or visit www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink.

* Not available on all models
## Unverified Routing

**SETTINGS button ➤ Navi Settings ➤ Routing ➤ Unverified Routing**

Receive turn-by-turn map and voice guidance in unverified areas.

- **Rotate** to select **On** or **Off**. Press 🔄.

### Differences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>On or Off?</th>
<th>Off</th>
<th>On (factory default)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On or Off?</td>
<td>The driver wishes to manually navigate using the navigation map and choose the streets that lead to the destination.</td>
<td>The driver chooses to let the navigation system suggest possible routing, knowing that the guidance may not be accurate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Route calculation</td>
<td>Route is usually longer, using verified roads whenever possible.</td>
<td>Route is shorter, but uses unverified (purple) streets that may not be accurate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unverified roads are found in rural areas, and typically include residential streets away from the center of a town. They may not be accurate, and can contain errors in location, naming, and address range.

Unverified roads are shown only when viewing the map in the 1/20, 1/8, 1/4, 1/2, 1 and 2 (mile) / 80, 200, 400, 800 (m), 1.6 and 3.2 (km) map scales.
## Routing

### Unverified Routing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Differences</th>
<th>Off</th>
<th>On (factory default)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Route line</td>
<td>The route line uses verified streets only (when possible). If <em>Straight Line Guide</em> is set to On, a pink vector line is displayed on the map that continually points to your destination.</td>
<td>A blue-pink route line highlights suggested unverified streets on the map while traveling to your destination. <strong>[Straight Line Guide](P. 80)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cautionary messages</td>
<td>Cautionary pop-up screens and voice announcements remind you to obey all traffic restrictions when starting route guidance, approaching an unverified area, and entering an unverified street.</td>
<td>Cautionary pop-up screens and voice announcements remind you to obey all traffic restrictions when entering an unverified street.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance (map/voice)</td>
<td>There is no turn-by-turn map or voice guidance.</td>
<td>Voice guidance commands end with the phrase &quot;if possible&quot; to remind you to verify all traffic restrictions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directions list</td>
<td>A direction list is typically not available. However, depending on your route, directions are provided to help you reach the first available verified road.</td>
<td>A direction list is provided showing street names and turn symbols in pink.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Traffic Rerouting

You must be in or near a traffic-enabled city to receive coverage for that area. Traffic information is available in certain areas in the lower 48 states, Hawaii, and some cities in Canada.

Traffic Rerouting requires an AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic subscription.

A faster route can be calculated based on continuously updated traffic information. A Traffic Rerouting™ P. 165

The following options are available:
- **On**: The system reroutes automatically based on traffic information.
- **Off** (factory default): Disables the feature.

Automatic traffic rerouting may not provide a detour route depending on circumstances.
Edit POI Search Radius Along Route

Select the distance from your highlighted route line (on either side of your route) that the system will search for a waypoint.

Adding Waypoints P. 170

You can specify a different search distance for freeways/highways and surface streets.

1. Rotate to select an item. Press .
2. Rotate to select a search distance. Press .

The following items are available:

- **On Freeways** (U.S.)/**On highways** (Canada): 1, 2, 5, or 10 miles (1.6, 3, 8, or 16 km) can be set. Factory default is 2 miles (3 km).
- **On Surface Streets**: 1/2, 1, 2, or 5 miles (0.8, 1.6, 3, or 8 km) can be set. Factory default is 1/2 mile (0.8 km).
Avoided Area

Specify up to five areas to avoid (e.g., road construction, closures), if possible, when the system calculates routes to your destination.

1. Move ⬇️ and rotate ⬇️ to select New Area, or rotate ⬆️ to select an existing area to edit.

2. Rotate ⬆️ to select Name to label the area to avoid. Press ❌.

3. Enter a name or title. Move ⬇️ to select OK.

4. Rotate ⬆️ to select Area to define the area to avoid. Press ❌.

The following options are available (after an area is set):

- **View Area**: Displays the selected avoid area on the map.
- **Delete**: Deletes the selected avoid area.

Additional Info:

The maximum size of one side of an “avoid area” is approximately 1/2 mile (800 m).

If your selected area contains a freeway/highway, you are asked “Do you want to avoid freeways (highways)?” Answering “No” allows you to use a route through an avoid area on a freeway/highway without any pop-up messages.

You can select areas to avoid; however, you cannot select roads or areas that you want the system to use for routing.

You can enter up to 25 characters for the name.
5. Rotate to select a method for specifying the area. Press .

The following options are available:

- **Address**: Specify the general area by entering an address.
  
  [Address] P. 128

- **Map Input**: Specify the general area by map input.
  
  [Map Input] P. 148

6. If you select Map Input, scroll the map to position the cursor over your desired start point, adjusting the map scale as necessary. Press to mark the start point.

   - To redo the area selection, press the BACK button.

7. Scroll the map to “draw” the area. Press to mark the end point.

8. Press to select OK.

   - The area you specify is displayed in the list of areas to avoid.

Avoid area can be set in the 1/20, 1/8, or 1/4 mile (80, 200, or 400 m) map scales.
Choose various settings that determine the navigation system functionality during route guidance.

The following items are available:

- **Guidance Mode**: Sets whether to display only the map screen or a split map-guidance screen.
  - Guidance Mode P. 65
- **Street Name Guidance** (U.S. models): Sets whether to read out the street names during voice guidance.
  - Street Name Guidance P. 67
- **Non-map Screens**: Sets whether the guidance screen interrupts the screen display.
  - Non-map Screens P. 68
- **Guidance Point**: Sets whether to display the guidance information to the destination or the next waypoint.
  - Guidance Point P. 69
- **Estimated Time**: Sets whether to display the remaining time or arrival time to the guidance point.
  - Estimated Time P. 70
Guidance Mode

Select the display mode for the map and guidance screens.

- **Map** (factory default): Displays only the map screen. When you approach a guidance point, the next guidance point appears.

The following options are available:

**Map Menu** P. 161

Press the NAV button to switch between the map, next guidance direction, and a list of guidance directions.

**Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 11

You can turn this feature on or off using the multi-information display. See the Owner's Manual for instructions.

---

Guidance Mode

The guidance mode can also be selected from the Map Menu.

Press the NAV button to switch between the map, next guidance direction, and a list of guidance directions.

**Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 11

You can turn this feature on or off using the multi-information display. See the Owner's Manual for instructions.
**Guidance Mode**

- **Direction List**: Displays the map and direction list simultaneously on the map screen. When you approach a guidance point, the next guidance point appears.

![Direction List screen](image1)

- **Next Maneuver**: Displays the map and next guidance point simultaneously on the map screen.

![Next Maneuver screen](image2)
Street Name Guidance

The navigation system includes the street names during voice guidance (e.g., “Turn right on Main Street”).

- **On** (factory default): Voice guidance includes the street names.
- **Off**: Disables the feature.

Rotate 🔄 to select an option. Press 🕒.

The following options are available:
- **On** (factory default): Voice guidance includes the street names.
- **Off**: Disables the feature.
Non-map Screens

The navigation system temporarily interrupts the screen display to view the guidance screen as you approach a guidance point.

The following options are available:

- **On**: The guidance screen interrupts other mode screens (e.g., audio, phone, etc, except the rear view camera mode).
- **Off** (factory default): Disables the feature.
Guidance Point

Set the guidance point to display on the map screen.

The following options are available:

- **Destination** (factory default): Displays the remaining/arrival time and distance to the destination.
- **Next Point**: Displays the remaining/arrival time and distance to the next waypoint.

Rotate the knob to select an option. Press the knob.
**Estimated Time**

Select the estimated time to display on the screen.

The following options are available:
- **Arrival**: Displays the arrival time to the destination or the next waypoint.
- **Remaining** (factory default): Displays the remaining time to the destination or the next waypoint.
Select the landmark icons to display on the map, change the orientation of the map, display your current location, and learn the meanings of the icons, colors, and symbols displayed on the map.

Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 📱.

The following items are available:

- **Show Icon on Map**: Selects the icons to display on the map.
  - [Showing Icons on Map](#) P. 73
- **Color (Day)**: Selects the color of the map for the Day mode.
  - [Color](#) P. 75
- **Color (Night)**: Selects the color of the map for the Night mode.
  - [Color](#) P. 75
- **View**: Selects the map orientation (North-up, Heading-up, or 3D map).
  - [View (Map Orientation)](#) P. 78
- **3D Angle Adjustment**: Adjusts the viewing angle for the 3D map.
  - [3D Angle Adjustment](#) P. 79
- **Straight Line Guide**: Sets whether to display a straight guideline to the destination or waypoint.
  - [Straight Line Guide](#) P. 80
Current Location: Displays and saves your current location.
- Current Location P. 81

Map Legend: Displays an overview of the map features.
- Map Legend P. 82

Display Tracking: Sets whether to display the tracking dots on the map.
- Display Tracking P. 86

Delete Tracking: Deletes the tracking dots on the map.
- Deleting Tracking Dots P. 87

Correct Vehicle Position: Adjusts the position of the vehicle on the map.
- Correct Vehicle Position P. 88

System Device Information: Views database, software, device, and vehicle identification information.
- System Device Information P. 351

Map Data Update: Checks the map data update status when updating the map database.
- Map Data Update P. 351
Showing Icons on Map

**SETTINGS** button ➤ Navi Settings ➤ Map ➤ Show Icon on Map

Select the icons that are displayed on the map.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 🎧.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select an option. Press 🎧.
   - Repeat step 1 and 2 as necessary.
3. Move 🔄 to select OK. Press 🎧.

The following options are available:
- **All On**: Displays the landmark icons.  
  
  [Map Screen Legend](#) P. 9
- **Customize**: Fine-tunes the icon display.  
  
  [Fine-tuning the Icons](#) P. 74
- **Off**: Hides the landmark icons.

If you have PIN-protected your address book, enter your PIN when prompted. Move 🔄 to select OK. PINs are optional.

- **PIN Numbers** P. 49
**Fine-tuning the Icons**

Icons in some categories can be fine-tuned to display or hide.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select the icons to display on the map. Press ✅.  
   - Pressing ✅ toggles the icon display on or off.  
   - Repeat the procedure as necessary.

2. Move 🔄 and rotate 🔄 to select OK. Press ✅.
Color

Set separate map colors for Day and Night modes.

**Color (Day)**

- **SETTINGS** button ➤ Navi Settings ➤ Map ➤ Color (Day)

Rotate 🔄 to select a color for the Day mode. Press 🎉.

**Color (Night)**

- **SETTINGS** button ➤ Navi Settings ➤ Map ➤ Color (Night)

Rotate 🔄 to select a color for the Night mode. Press 🎉.

The factory default is set to **Beige**.

The factory default is set to **Blue**.
System Setup

1. Press the (Display Mode) button.
   - The Brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.
   - Rotate to adjust the brightness. Press .
2. Press the (Display Mode) button again.
   - Repeat the procedure to switch the display modes.

### Switching Display Mode Manually

Set the screen brightness separately for Day and Night modes. Press the (Display Mode) button to cycle through the display modes (Day to Night to Off).

#### Illumination Priority Operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illumination</th>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Display Mode) button</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Selects Day, Night, or Off display mode. This button has the highest priority and overrides all other display control adjustments listed below. <strong>Remember:</strong> Once you press this button, you assume full manual control of the display mode until the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunlight sensor (see your Owner's Manual for location)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>If the sunlight sensor detects daylight and the headlights are turned on, the system automatically overrides the Night display and displays the Day display mode. <strong>Remember:</strong> If desired, use the (Display Mode) button to override this automatic choice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A visual guide helps you see the difference between Day and Night modes.

**Day or Night Mode** P. 11
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illumination</th>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dash illumination adjustment buttons</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>When headlights are turned on, and you wish to have the Day display mode, adjust the illumination to the full brightness setting (beeps). Remember: Adjust the dash brightness back to mid-range to allow auto switching by sensing if the headlights are on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlights (Auto/On/Off)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>When turned on, the display changes to Night display mode. The previous three controls listed above can “cancel” this function. Remember: Use the (Display Mode) button, to adjust the dash illumination to full brightness, or set the display to your desired choice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen color choice</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>The user can select the color of the screen that will be displayed for the Day and Night display modes described above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
View (Map Orientation)

Select the map orientation.

Rotate \(\circ\) to select an option. Press \(\circ\).

The following options are available:

- **North-up**: Displays the map with North always pointing up.
- **Heading-up**: Displays the map so that the direction you are traveling is always pointing up.
- **3D Map**: Displays the bird’s eye view map.

The red arrow in the symbol always points North.

Heading-up and 3D map view switch to the North-up view on 2 miles (3.2 km) or wider map scale.

The bird’s eye view map switches to the Heading-up map while scrolling the map.

The viewing angle for the bird’s eye view can be adjusted.

3D Angle Adjustment P. 79
3D Angle Adjustment

Adjust the viewing angle.

Rotate 🔄 to adjust the angle. Press 🛑.
### Straight Line Guide

**SETTINGS** button ➤ **Navi Settings** ➤ **Map** ➤ **Straight Line Guide**

Set whether to display a straight guideline to the destination or waypoint.

- **On** (factory default): Displays the straight guideline on the map.
- **Off**: Disables the feature.

The following options are available:

- **On**: Displays the straight guideline on the map.
- **Off**: Disables the feature.
Current Location

Display and save your current location for future use as a destination. The address, latitude, longitude, and elevation of your current location are displayed.

To save your current location in the address book:

1. Press \( \rightarrow \) to select Address Book. Move \( \leftarrow \) to scroll the map as necessary.

2. Edit the name, phone number, and category.

3. Move \( \uparrow \) and rotate \( \downarrow \) to select OK. Press \( \rightarrow \).

If you have PIN-protected your address book, enter your PIN when prompted. Press \( \rightarrow \) to select OK. PINs are optional.

The elevation is not displayed if the system is receiving insufficient GPS information. When elevation is displayed, it may differ with roadside elevation signs by ±100 ft (±30 m) or more.

Saving your current location does not change or cancel your current route.
Map Legend

See an overview of the map lines, areas, routes, traffic information, and navigation icons.

Move ⬅ or ⬆ to select an item.
► The system displays the map legend.
### Map Scale and Functions

The functions that are available from the map screen depend on the map scale.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Map Scale (top: mile, bottom: metric)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/20</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/8</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Icon display**
  - Landmark icon: 9
  - Exit info.: 9
  - One-way traffic: 9
  - Waypoint “flag”: 11
  - Traffic incident: 10

- **Map orientation**
  - Heading-up: 78
  - North-up: 78
  - 3D map: 78

- **Others**
  - Tracking dots: 158
  - Unverified road: 9
  - Map features: 9
  - Avoid areas: 62
  - Traffic speed: 10

You can change between mile or km. [Unit Settings P. 35](#)
Map Icons and Functions

Display or hide all icons on the map screen, with the exception of Honda/Acura Dealer icons which are always shown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Icon display control</th>
<th>Icon selectable</th>
<th>Icon searchable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Honda/Acura dealer</td>
<td>Always on</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas station</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restaurants</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post office</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grocery store</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotel/Lodging</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Police station</td>
<td>No icon</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shopping, Tourist attraction, Bank</td>
<td>No icon</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking garage</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking lot</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeway/Highway exit info.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Map Icons and Functions

Icon display control
Icons that can be displayed or hidden using the Interface Dial or voice command.

Icon selectable
Icons that can be selected as a destination using the Interface Dial.

Icon searchable
Icons that can be searched using the Find Nearest voice command.
### Traffic icon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Icon display control</th>
<th>Icon selectable</th>
<th>Icon searchable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Traffic incident</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you use the Interface Dial to position the cursor (round red circle) over the traffic incident icon, you can view the summary of the incident.

Press 📌 on the traffic incident icon to view a pop-up message describing the incident in detail.
Display Tracking

The navigation system can be set to display white tracking dots ("breadcrumbs") on the map screen.

- On: The system displays the white tracking dots.
- Off (factory default): Disables the feature.

Rotate 🔄 to select an option. Press ✅.
Deleting Tracking Dots

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, delete the tracking dots.

Select Yes to continue. Press OK.
Correct Vehicle Position

**SETTNGS button ▶ Navi Settings ▶ Map ▶ Correct Vehicle Position**

Manually adjust the current position of the vehicle as displayed on the map screen if the position appears to be incorrect.

1. Put the vehicle in Park.
2. Rotate ☰ to select Correct Vehicle Position. Press 🕒.
3. Scroll the map to position the cursor over at your correct position. Press 🕒.
4. Rotate ☰ to position the arrowhead in the correct direction the vehicle is facing.
5. Press 🕒 to select OK.

**Correct Vehicle Position**

An apparent position error can occur where buildings, tunnels, and other objects block or reflect the GPS signals, forcing the system to use “dead reckoning” to determine your location and direction.

Using this function to adjust the vehicle position is not recommended. When the system reacquires a GPS signal, it will automatically place the vehicle in the correct location.

If you continually have to adjust the vehicle position, you may have problems with GPS reception or there may be database errors.

**System Limitations** P. 402
On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Changing the Screen Settings

Adjusts the screen settings of the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

1. Select More.
2. Select Screen Settings.
3. Use +, - or other icons to adjust the setting.
   ▶ Use the [A]/[V] icons to turn the page.
   ▶ Select [X] to go back to the previous screen.

The followings are adjustable screen settings:
- **Sync Display Brightness**: Selects whether the screen brightness synchronizes with the instrument panel brightness.
- **Brightness**: Adjusts the screen's brightness.
- **Contrast**: Adjusts the screen's contrast.
- **Black Level**: Adjusts the screen's black level.
- **Display**: Changes between the daytime or nighttime modes.
- **Beep**: Turns on or off the beep that sounds every time you touch the screen.
- **Keyboard**: Changes the on-screen keyboard from the alphabetical order to the qwerty type.
- **Vibration**: Turns on or off the vibration when you touch the screen.
- **Fade Timer**: Sets the screen black out timing.
Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize
Select your desired setting item by pressing the SETTINGS button, then rotating while the power mode is ON and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press.

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and select the gear position to [P].

To customize other features, rotate or , move or , and press.

List of customizable options P. 100
Customization flow

Press the SETTINGS button.

- System Settings
  - Display
  - Sound/Beep
  - Voice Rec
  - Default
  - OK

- Bluetooth
  - Bluetooth Status
  - Bluetooth Device List
  - Edit Pairing Code

- Clock
  - Clock/Wallpaper Type
  - Clock
  - Clock Adjustment
  - Clock Format
  - Auto Time Zone
  - Auto Daylight
  - Clock Reset

- System Setup
  - Sync Display Brightness
  - Brightness
  - Contrast
  - Black Level
  - Guidance Volume
  - Verbal Reminder
  - Voice Prompt
  - Song By Voice
  - Song By Voice Phonetic Modification
  - Phonebook Phonetic Modification
  - Guidance Volume
  - Bluetooth Status
  - Bluetooth Device List
  - Edit Pairing Code
  - Clock/Wallpaper Type
  - Clock
  - Clock Adjustment
  - Clock Format
  - Auto Time Zone
  - Auto Daylight
  - Clock Reset
Customized Features

System Setup

Vehicle Settings
- Default
- OK

Driver Assist System Setup

Meter Setup

Others
- Units
- Language
- Operation Restriction Tips
- Background Color
- Header Clock Display
- System Device Information
- Factory Data Reset

Forward Collision Warning Distance
- ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep
- ACC Display Speed Unit
- Road Departure Mitigation Setting
- Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep
- Blind Spot Info

Language Selection
- Adjust Outside Temp. Display
- "Trip A" Reset Timing
- "Trip B" Reset Timing
- Reverse Alert Tone
- Turn by Turn Display
- Memory Position Link
- Easy Entry/Exit

Others

Others

Factory Data Reset

* Not available on all models
Customized Features

System Setup

Map

- Show Icon on Map
- Color (Day)
- Color (Night)
- View
- 3D Angle Adjustment
- Straight Line Guide
- Current Location
- Map Legend
- Display Tracking
- Delete Tracking
- Correct Vehicle Position
- System Device Information
- Map Data Update
Customized Features

System Setup

Camera Settings

Rear Camera

Default

OK

Surround View Camera

Guidelines

Preferences

Fixed Guideline

Dynamic Guideline

Automatically Show Camera After Reverse

Default Camera Mode in Forward

Default Camera Mode in Reverse

Show Camera When Decelerating

Clear Parking Guidance Automatically Display

Cross Traffic Monitor

* Not available on all models
Customized Features

*1: May change depending on your currently selected source.

* Not available on all models
Customized Features

System Setup

- Default
- Rear Ent
- Source Select Popup
  - Rear Control
  - Rear Speaker
  - Single/Dual Screen Mode
- OK

* Not available on all models
### List of customizable options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>Sync Display Brightness</td>
<td>Selects whether the display brightness synchronizes with the instrument panel brightness.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Black Level</td>
<td>Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Settings</td>
<td>Guidance Volume</td>
<td>Changes the volume of the audio speakers.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Verbal Reminder</td>
<td>Turns the verbal reminders on and off.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voice Prompt</td>
<td>Turns the voice prompt on and off.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Song By Voice</td>
<td>Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Song By Voice Phonetic Modification</td>
<td>Modifies a voice command for music stored in the HDD or an iPod.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice Reco</td>
<td>Phonebook Phonetic Modification</td>
<td>Modifies a voice command for the phonebook.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guidance Volume</td>
<td>Changes the volume of the voice prompt.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td>Bluetooth Status</td>
<td>Turns the Bluetooth® on and off.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bluetooth Device List</td>
<td>Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, and creates a security PIN.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Pairing a Phone] P. 269</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edit Pairing Code</td>
<td>Changes a pairing code.</td>
<td>Random/Fixed*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Changing the Pairing Code] P. 272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
# Customized Features

## System Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Settings</td>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Changes the clock display type.</td>
<td>Analog/Digital*1/Small Digital/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clock/</td>
<td>Clock/</td>
<td>Changes the wallpaper type. Changes the wallpaper type. Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wallpaper Type</td>
<td>Wallpaper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wallpaper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clock Adjustment</td>
<td>Adjusts Clock.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clock Format</td>
<td>Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.</td>
<td>12H*/24H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Time Zone</td>
<td>Sets the navigation system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Daylight</td>
<td>Sets the navigation system to automatically adjust the clock (“spring ahead” or “fall back” by one hour) when a daylight saving time change occurs.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clock Reset</td>
<td>Resets the settings of all items in the Clock group.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Settings</td>
<td>Units</td>
<td>Changes the distance unit on the navigation map screen.</td>
<td>mile*/1/km (U.S.) mile/km*1 (Canada)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Changes the display language.</td>
<td>English*/1/Français/ Español</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation Restriction Tips*</td>
<td>Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.</td>
<td>On*/1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Background Color</td>
<td>Changes the background color of the audio/information screen and the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.</td>
<td>Blue*/1/Amber/Red/Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Header Clock Display</td>
<td>Selects whether the clock display comes on.</td>
<td>On*/1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>System Device Information</td>
<td>Displays the system/device information.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Factory Data Reset</td>
<td>Resets all the settings to their factory default.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Cancels/Resets all customized items in the System Settings group as default.</td>
<td>Default/OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Settings</td>
<td>Forward Collision Warning Distance</td>
<td>Changes at which distance CMBS™ alerts. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Long/Normal/Short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver Assist System Setup</td>
<td>ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep</td>
<td>Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC with LSF range. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ACC Display Speed Unit</td>
<td>Changes the speed unit for ACC on the multi-information display. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>mph/<em>1/km/h (U.S.) mph/km/h</em>1 (Canada)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</td>
<td>Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Normal/Wide/Warning Only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep</td>
<td>Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blind Spot Info</td>
<td>Changes the setting for the blind spot information. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Audible And Visual Alert*1/Visual Alert/Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Language Selection</strong></td>
<td>Changes the displayed language on the multi-information display. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td></td>
<td>English“1”/Français/ Español</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</strong></td>
<td>Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td></td>
<td>-5°F ~ ±0°F “1” ~ +5°F (U.S.) -3°C ~ ±0°C “1” ~ +3°C (Canada)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>“Trip A” Reset Timing</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td></td>
<td>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset“1”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>“Trip B” Reset Timing</strong></td>
<td>Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td></td>
<td>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset“1”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reverse Alert Tone</strong></td>
<td>Turns the audible notification on and off when you set the gear position to [R]. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td></td>
<td>On“1”/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Turn by Turn Display</strong></td>
<td>Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td></td>
<td>On“1”/Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Settings</td>
<td>Memory Position Link</td>
<td>Turns the driving position memory system on and off using a remote transmitter. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Easy Entry/Exit</td>
<td>Moves the seat rearward and steering wheel fully up when you get in/get out of the vehicle. Changes the setting for this feature. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Seat &amp; Steering Wheel*/1/Seat Only/Steering Wheel Only/Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
## Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle</td>
<td>Door Unlock Mode</td>
<td>Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver’s door handle.</td>
<td>Driver’s Door or Tailgate Only*/All Doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Keyless Access Beep Volume*</td>
<td>Changes the volume of the keyless access beep.</td>
<td>High*/Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Keyless Access Light Flash</td>
<td>Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Keyless Access Beep</td>
<td>Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Remote Start System On/Off</td>
<td>Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Walk Away Auto Lock</td>
<td>Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.</td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

---

**Continued** 107
## Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Settings</td>
<td>Interior Light Dimming Time</td>
<td>Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>60 seconds/30 seconds*/1/15 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting Setup</td>
<td>Headlight Auto Off Timer</td>
<td>Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver’s door. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>60 seconds/30 seconds*/1/15 seconds/0 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Light Sensitivity</td>
<td>Changes the timing for the headlights to come on. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Max/High/Mid*/1/Low/Min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Settings</td>
<td>Auto Door Lock</td>
<td>Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature. See the owner's manual.</td>
<td>With Vehicle Speed(^1)/Shift from P/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door Setup</td>
<td>Auto Door Unlock</td>
<td>Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically. See the owner's manual.</td>
<td>All Doors When Driver's Door Opens(^1)/All Doors When Shifted to Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</td>
<td>Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote or built-in key. See the owner's manual.</td>
<td>Driver Door(^1)/All Doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Keyless Lock Answer Back</td>
<td>LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds. See the owner's manual.</td>
<td>On(^1)/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Security Relock Timer</td>
<td>Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. See the owner's manual.</td>
<td>90seconds/60seconds/30seconds(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Folding Door Mirror</td>
<td>Changes how you can fold the door mirrors. See the owner's manual.</td>
<td>Auto Fold With Keyless(^1)/Manual Only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
# Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power Tailgate Setup</strong></td>
<td><strong>Keyless Open Mode</strong></td>
<td>Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Anytime'/When Unlocked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Power Open By Outer Handle</strong></td>
<td>Selects whether to enable the power tailgate open operation using the tailgate outer handle. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Off (Manual Only)/On (Power/Manual)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vehicle Settings</strong></td>
<td><strong>Preferred Dynamic Mode</strong></td>
<td>Changes the dynamic mode setting for when you set the power mode to ON. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>Last Used'/Comfort/Normal/Sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Maintenance Reset</strong></td>
<td>Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service. See the owner’s manual.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle Settings group as default.</td>
<td>Default/OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Navi Settings</th>
<th>Personal Info</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Address Book</strong></td>
<td>Stores new addresses or edits your address book.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Edit Go Home</strong></td>
<td>Sets or edits your home address.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PIN Number</strong></td>
<td>Sets or changes your PIN.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Previous Destination</strong></td>
<td>Deletes the destination history.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Category History</strong></td>
<td>Deletes the place categories you recently used.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Download POI</strong></td>
<td>Edits and deletes the Imported POI categories.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Navi Settings</td>
<td>Freeways</td>
<td>Change the route preference by selecting minimum or maximum driving methods.</td>
<td>Max*1/Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toll Roads</td>
<td></td>
<td>Max*1/Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ETC Roads</td>
<td></td>
<td>Max/Min*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ferries</td>
<td></td>
<td>Max*1/Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>U-Turn</td>
<td></td>
<td>Max/Min*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Route Preference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Server Route*</td>
<td>View three routes distributed from AcuraLink*.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optimal Routes*</td>
<td>You can select desired routes by sorting the route list.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unverified Routing</td>
<td>Sets whether you use the route guidance in unverified areas.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Traffic Rerouting</td>
<td>Sets whether you use automatic recalculation based on traffic information.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edit POI Search Radius Along Route</td>
<td>On Freeways</td>
<td>Sets the distance from the route to find waypoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>On Surface Streets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Avoided Area</td>
<td>Specifies areas to avoid when calculating a route.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
## Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Navi Settings</td>
<td>Guidance Mode</td>
<td>Sets whether to display only the map screen or a split map guidance screen.</td>
<td>Map*/1/Direction List/Next Maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Street Name Guidance</td>
<td>Sets whether to read out the street names during voice guidance (U.S. models).</td>
<td>On*/1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-map Screens</td>
<td>Sets whether the guidance screen interrupts the screen display.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guidance Point</td>
<td>Sets whether to display the guidance information to the destination or the next waypoint.</td>
<td>Destination*/1/Next Point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estimated Time</td>
<td>Sets whether to display the remaining time or arrival time to the guidance point.</td>
<td>Arrival/Remaining*/1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Navi Settings</td>
<td>Show Icon on Map</td>
<td>Selects the icons to display on the map.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map</td>
<td>Color (Day)</td>
<td>Selects the color of the map for the Day mode.</td>
<td>White/Beige*/Blue/Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Color (Night)</td>
<td>Selects the color of the map for the Night mode.</td>
<td>White/Beige/Blue*/Black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>View</td>
<td>Selects the map orientation.</td>
<td>North-up*/Heading-up/3D Map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3D Angle Adjustment</td>
<td>Adjusts the viewing angle for the 3D map.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Straight Line Guide</td>
<td>Sets whether to display a straight guideline to the destination or waypoint.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Current Location</td>
<td>Displays and saves your current location.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Map Legend</td>
<td>Displays an overview of the map features.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Display Tracking</td>
<td>Sets whether to display the tracking dots on the map.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete Tracking</td>
<td>Deletes the tracking dots on the map.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Correct Vehicle Position</td>
<td>Adjusts the position of the vehicle on the map.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>System Device Information</td>
<td>Views database, software, device, and vehicle identification information.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Map Data Update</td>
<td>Checks the map data update status when updating the map database.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear Camera</strong></td>
<td>Fixed Guideline</td>
<td>Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic Guideline</td>
<td>Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera group as default.</td>
<td>Default/OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Camera Settings</strong></td>
<td>Fixed Guideline</td>
<td>Sets whether to turn on the reference line display.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dynamic Guideline</td>
<td>Sets whether to turn on the projection line display.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Automatically Show Camera After Reverse</td>
<td>Sets the rear view to be automatically switched to the front view when the gear position is out of [R].</td>
<td>On/Off*/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surround View Camera</strong></td>
<td>Default Camera Mode in Forward</td>
<td>Selects which screen to display when the surround view camera system is turned on while the vehicle is moving forward.</td>
<td>Front Ground View*/1/ Last Used/Front Blind View/Side View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default Camera Mode in Reverse</td>
<td>Selects which screen to display when the surround view camera system is turned on while the vehicle is reversing.</td>
<td>Rear Ground View*/1/ Last Used/Rear View/Rear Wide View</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

---

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camera Settings</td>
<td>Show Camera When Decelerating</td>
<td>Sets the screen to automatically return to the camera view at vehicle speeds of 7 mph (12 km/h) or lower. The screen can return only when the display has been switched to the audio/information screen at the vehicle speed of over 9 mph (15 km/h).</td>
<td>On/Off&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clear Parking Guidance Automatically</td>
<td>Turns the parking guide lines on and off.</td>
<td>On&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Display</td>
<td>Adjusts the screen's preferences.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Cancel the cross traffic monitor feature on and off. See the owner's manual.</td>
<td>Default/OK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

---

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SiriusXM® mode</strong></td>
<td><strong>Notification</strong></td>
<td>Turns on and off the sports alert function.</td>
<td>Disable*/Enable/Enable(one time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SXM</td>
<td><strong>Beep</strong></td>
<td>Causes the system to beep when the sports alert is notified.</td>
<td><strong>On</strong>*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Favorite Teams</strong></td>
<td>Selects your favorite sport teams.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audio Settings</strong></td>
<td><strong>Play Song from Beginning</strong></td>
<td>Turns on and off the Tune Start function.</td>
<td><strong>On</strong>*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Traffic &amp; Weather Now Setup</strong></td>
<td>Selects the location to display the SiriusXM® traffic and weather information.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Channel Art</strong></td>
<td>Turns on and off the channel art display.</td>
<td><strong>On/Off</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CD/HDD</strong></td>
<td><strong>Recording from CD</strong></td>
<td>Selects whether the songs on music CDs are automatically recorded to the HDD.</td>
<td><strong>Auto</strong>*/Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Recording Quality</strong></td>
<td>Selects the quality of the music files recorded to the HDD.</td>
<td><strong>Standard</strong>*/High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>HDD Info</strong></td>
<td>Displays the HDD capacity.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Update Gracenote Album Info</strong></td>
<td>Updates the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) from CD or from USB.</td>
<td><strong>Update by CD</strong>*/Update by USB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Delete All HDD Data</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bluetooth</strong></td>
<td>Bluetooth® Audio, Pandora® or Aha™ mode</td>
<td>Edits or deletes a Bluetooth® Audio device paired to HFL.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth Device List</td>
<td>Bluetooth® Audio, Pandora® or Aha™ mode</td>
<td>Connects, disconnects, or pairs a Bluetooth® Audio device to HFL.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Settings</td>
<td>DVD Auto Play</td>
<td>Turns the auto play feature on or off.</td>
<td>On&quot;/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD Auto Play</td>
<td>Audio Language</td>
<td>Selects a language for the audio that is available on the DVD.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD Subtitle Language</td>
<td>Subtitle Language</td>
<td>Selects a language for the subtitle that is available on the DVD.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD Menu Language</td>
<td>Menu Language</td>
<td>Selects a language for the DVD menu that is available on the DVD.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD Dynamic Range</td>
<td>Dynamic Range</td>
<td>Sets whether to control the range of the loud and low sounds.</td>
<td>On&quot;/Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio Settings</td>
<td>Source Select Popup</td>
<td>Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the AUDIO button is pressed.</td>
<td>On/Off*²¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HD Radio Mode *</td>
<td>Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analogue waves only.</td>
<td>Auto*²¹/Analog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iPod, USB, Pandora® or Aha™ mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cover Art</td>
<td>Turns on and off the cover art display.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio Settings group as default.</td>
<td>Default/OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*¹: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>Connect Phone</td>
<td>Pairs a new phone to HFL, or connects or disconnects a paired phone.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Pairing a Phone" /> [P. 269]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bluetooth Device List</td>
<td>Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN.</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Phone Settings" /> [P. 287]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Edit Speed Dial</td>
<td>Edits, adds, or deletes a speed dial entry.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Setting Up Speed Dialing" /> [P. 276]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Transfer</td>
<td>Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto Answer</td>
<td>Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming call after about four seconds.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ring Tone</td>
<td>Selects the ring tone.</td>
<td>Fixed/Mobile Phone*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Automatic Phone Sync</td>
<td>Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use Contact Photo</td>
<td>Displays a caller’s picture on an incoming call screen.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phone Settings</td>
<td>Enable Text/Email</td>
<td>Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text/Email</td>
<td>Select Account</td>
<td>Selects a text or e-mail message account.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>New Text/Email Alert</td>
<td>Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone Settings group as default.</td>
<td>Default/OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
### Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Info Settings</td>
<td>AcuraLink Msg Notice</td>
<td>Selects whether newly received AcuraLink messages are to be displayed.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info Settings</td>
<td>Delete AcuraLink Message</td>
<td>Deletes AcuraLink messages.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info Settings</td>
<td>AcuraLink Subscription Status</td>
<td>Displays your current AcuraLink subscription status.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Clock/Wallpaper Type</td>
<td>Clock/Wallpaper Type.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Clock Adjustment</td>
<td>Clock Adjustment.</td>
<td>See System Settings on P. 100 to P. 103.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Clock Format</td>
<td>Clock Format.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Auto Time Zone</td>
<td>Auto Time Zone.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Auto Daylight</td>
<td>Auto Daylight.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Clock Reset</td>
<td>Clock Reset.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Info Screen Preference</td>
<td>Selects the top menu when the INFO button is pressed.</td>
<td>Info Top/Info Menu*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Info Top</strong> - A brief menu pops up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Info Menu</strong> - A full menu pops up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Off</strong> - A menu does not pop up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Info Screen Preference</td>
<td>Selects the top menu when the INFO button is pressed.</td>
<td>Info Top/Info Menu*/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Info Top</strong> - A brief menu pops up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Info Menu</strong> - A full menu pops up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Off</strong> - A menu does not pop up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting
## Customized Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup Group</th>
<th>Customizable Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Selectable Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear Ent Settings</strong></td>
<td><strong>Source Select Popup</strong></td>
<td>Select weather the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the REAR AUDIO button is pressed.</td>
<td>On/Off*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Rear Control</strong></td>
<td>Select weather to use the rear control panel to control the RES.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Rear Speaker</strong></td>
<td>Sets the front audio source to play through the rear speakers, even when the RES is on. The RES source can only be heard through the wireless headphones.</td>
<td>On*1/Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Single/Dual Screen Mode</strong></td>
<td>Selects a source to continue playing when you switch from dual mode to single mode on the overhead screen. Rotate 🎧 to select a source and press 🎧.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Default</strong></td>
<td>Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Ent Settings group as default.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models
Data Reset

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select Yes. Press 🖇.
   ▶️ The confirmation message will appear.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select Yes. Press again to reset the settings.
   ▶️ The confirmation message will appear. Press 🖇 to select OK.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

The following settings will be reset:
• Routing & Guidance: Rerouting, Unverified Area Routing, Traffic Rerouting, Edit Waypoint Search Area, Guidance Mode, Street Name Guidance
• Route Preference
• Audio preset settings
• Phonebook entries
• Other display items and each item settings.
Navigation

This section describes how to enter a destination, select a route to take, and follow the route to your destination. It also describes how to change your route or destination along the way.

**Entering a Destination** ................. 126  
Address ............................................... 128  
Address Book....................................... 135  
Previous Destination............................. 136  
Place Category..................................... 137  
Local Search........................................... 139  
Place Name.......................................... 141  
Place Phone Number............................ 144  
Download POI...................................... 145  
Scenic Route ........................................ 146  
Intersection.......................................... 147  
Map Input............................................ 148  
Coordinate .......................................... 150

**Calculating the Route** .................... 151  
Viewing the Routes............................ 153  
**Driving to Your Destination** ............ 154  
Viewing the Route ................................ 154  
Listening to Voice Guidance.................. 159  
Reaching a Waypoint ............................. 160

**Map Menu** ...................................... 161  
Displaying the Map Menu ....................... 161  
Hide Traffic Flow................................... 163  
Directions .......................................... 163  
Traffic Rerouting™ ............................... 165

**Changing Your Route** ..................... 168  
Pausing the Route................................ 169  
Canceling the Route ............................ 169

Adding Waypoints ............................... 170  
Editing the Destination List.................. 174  
Taking a Detour .................................... 176  
Avoiding Streets................................... 176  
**Changing Your Destination** ............. 177  
Find Nearest Place ............................ 177  
Selecting a Destination on the Map ....... 178  
Entering a New Destination..................... 179

**Resuming Your Trip** ....................... 180
Entering a Destination

MENU button (on map)

This section describes how to enter a destination for route guidance.

Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 🆕.

Select More Search Methods to display additional menu entries.

The following items are available:

- **Address**: Sets a destination by entering an address.
  - Address P. 128
- **Address Book**: Sets a destination by selecting an address stored in your Address Book.
  - Address Book P. 135
- **Previous Destination**: Sets a destination by selecting a previous destination.
  - Previous Destination P. 136

If you press the MENU button when en route, the Route Option screen is displayed.

- Changing Your Route P. 168

Prior to departure, you can set areas along your route to avoid.

- Avoided Area P. 62
• **Go Home**: Sets your home address as a destination.
  - **Going Home** P. 12

• **Place Category**: Sets a destination by selecting a place/landmark.
  - **Place Category** P. 137

• **Local Search**: Sets a destination by using Local Search.
  - **Local Search** P. 139

• **Place Name**: Sets a destination by entering a place name.
  - **Place Name** P. 141

• **Place Phone Number**: Sets a destination by entering the phone number of a place/landmark.
  - **Place Phone Number** P. 144

• **Download POI**: Sets a destination by using a list of the imported POI (category and places) data you created.
  - **Download POI** P. 145

• **Scenic Route**: Sets a destination by using a list of scenic roads for each state or province (U.S. and Canada only).
  - **Scenic Route** P. 146

• **Intersection**: Sets a destination (intersection) by entering two streets.
  - **Intersection** P. 147

• **Map Input**: Sets a destination by scrolling through the map.
  - **Map Input** P. 148

• **Coordinate**: Sets a destination by entering latitude and longitude.
  - **Coordinate** P. 150
Entering a Destination ► Address

Address

MENU button ► Address

Enter an address to use as the destination. The state or province you are currently in is displayed (e.g., California).

Rotate 📈 to select an item. Press 🎉:

The following items are available:
• City: Selects your destination city.  
  🚗 Selecting a City P. 131
• Street: Selects your destination street.  
  🚗 Selecting a Street P. 132
• House Number: Enters the house number to select the street.  
  🚗 Selecting a Street by House Number P. 134
• ZIP Code (U.S.)/Postal Code (Canada): Enters the zip code or postal code to select the city.  
  🚗 Selecting a City by Zip Code or Postal Code P. 130
• Change State (U.S.)/Change Province (Canada): Selects the state or province.  
  🚗 Selecting the State or Province P. 129
Entering a Destination

Selecting the State or Province

MENU button ➤ Address ➤ Change State/Change Province

Selecting the State or Province

Move ← or → to select the following areas:
- USA for the U.S. mainland, Alaska, Hawaii, and Puerto Rico
- Canada
- Mexico

Rotate ↑ or ↓ to select a state or province from the list. Press .
Entering a Destination

Address

Selecting a City by Zip Code or Postal Code

MENU button ➤ Address ➤ ZIP Code/Postal Code

1. Enter the zip code or postal code of your destination.
2. Move to select OK. Press .
3. Rotate to select the destination city from the list. Press .

Next, you are prompted to enter a street name.

Selecting a Street P. 132

Selecting a City by Zip Code or Postal Code

If your city is not listed, it may be part of a larger metropolitan area. Try entering the street first.
Entering a Destination

Address

The name of the city where you are currently located is displayed.

1. Enter the name of a different city, or move to select OK for the current city. Press 📋.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select your destination city from the list. Press 📋.
   - A list of matching hits is automatically displayed after you enter several letters, with the closest match at the top of the list. Matching letters are highlighted.

   Next, you are prompted to enter a street name.

Selecting a City

Vehicle position may not be displayed when:
- The automobile is traveling off-road.
- The vehicle position data cannot be updated.
You do not need to enter spaces or symbols (e.g., &, -, %). Partial matches are supported (e.g., “ANGELES” to find “LOS ANGELES”).

If your city is not listed, it may be part of a larger metropolitan area. Try entering the street first.

Selecting a Street P. 132
Entering a Destination

Address

Selecting a Street

MENU button ➤ Address ➤ Street

1. Enter the name of your destination street.
   ➤ Do not enter the street type (e.g., street, road, avenue) or direction (e.g., north, south, east, west).
   ➤ Move to select OK to display a list of streets. Press .

2. Rotate to select your destination street from the list. Press .
   ➤ A list of matching hits is automatically displayed after you enter several letters, with the closest match at the top of the list. Matching letters are highlighted.

Selecting a Street

When entering the names of major freeways/highways, you can use the following abbreviations. For interstates, use an “I” (e.g., I-10). For U.S. freeways, use “US” (e.g., US-18). For state freeways, use the two-character state designation (e.g., CA-101). For county roads, use the appropriate designation (e.g., G-2).
For Trans-Canada and Provincial highways, use “Hwy” (HWY-7). For County roads, use “CR” (CR-32). For Regional Roads, use “RR” (RR-5).

If you did not select a city first and there is more than one city with the specified street, a list of cities is displayed.

Rotate to select the desired city from the list. Press .
3. Enter the street number.  
   ► Only valid street numbers can be entered.
4. Move ☰ to select OK. Press ☰.
5. Set the route to your destination.
   ► Calculating the Route P. 151

Continued
Entering a Destination

Address

Selecting a Street by House Number

MENU button ➤ Address ➤ House Number

1. Enter the house number.
   ▶ Only a valid house number can be entered.

2. Move to select OK. Press .
   ▶ If you did not yet select a street name, enter a street name when you are prompted.

3. Rotate to select your destination street from the list. Press .
   ▶ Select a city when you are prompted.

4. Set the route to your destination.
   ➤ Calculating the Route P. 151
Address Book

MENU button ➤ Address Book

Select an address stored in your address book to use as the destination.

1. Rotate ‾ to select your destination from the list. Press ✓.
2. Set the route to your destination.

Calculating the Route P. 151

Move ◀ or ▶ to display only the entries in the categories you have created.

Selecting an Address Book Category P. 44

Address Book

If you have PIN-protected your address book, enter your PIN when prompted. Press ✓ to select OK. PINs are optional.

PIN Numbers P. 49

Move ◀ and rotate ‾ to select the following items:
• Add New Address: Adds an entry to the address book.
• Add an Address Book Entry P. 42
• Sort: Selects Sort by Name or Sort by Distance.
• Delete All: Deletes all entries in the address book.
• Driver 1 or Driver 2: Displays the address book for the selected user.
Previous Destination

Select an address from a list of your 50 most recent destinations to use as the destination. The list is displayed with the most recent destination at the top.

1. Rotate \( \text{Rotate} \) to select a destination from the list. Press \( \text{Previous Destination} \).
2. Set the route to your destination. \( \text{Calculating the Route P. 151} \)

If \( \text{Previous Destination} \) is grayed out, there are no previous destinations entered.

Your home address and addresses stored in your address book are not added to the list of previous destinations.

Move \( \text{Move} \) and rotate \( \text{Rotate} \) to select \( \text{Delete All} \) to delete all previous destinations.

You can delete unwanted previous destinations from the list.

\( \text{Previous Destination P. 50} \)
Place Category

Select the category of a place (e.g., Banking, Lodging, Restaurant) stored in the map database to search for the destination.

1. Rotate  to select a category. Press .

2. Rotate  to select a subcategory. Press .

This option is convenient if you do not know the exact name of a place or if you want to narrow down the number of matches returned for places with a common name.

Move  to select Category History to access your recently used place categories. Up to 30 categories can be stored.

You can also delete your recently used place categories.

Search POI Categories helps you to search the subcategory. When you enter a keyword and select OK, the list of appropriate subcategories is displayed.
Entering a Destination ➤ Place Category

3. Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 🔄.

The following items are available:

- **Search by Name**: Searches for a place in the subcategory by name. Enter a place name when prompted.
- **Sort by Distance to Travel**: Displays all the places in the subcategory sorted by distance from your current location. The closest place is displayed at the top.
- **City Vicinity**: Searches for a place in the subcategory within a 20 mile (32 km) radius of a specific city. Enter a city name when prompted and then select a city. Only the first 1000 matching places/landmarks are displayed.

4. Rotate 🔄 to select a destination from the list. Press 🔄.

5. Set the route to your destination.

Calculating the Route P. 151

Place Category

The straight line distance (as the crow flies, not driving distance) and direction to the destination are shown for the highlighted place.
Local Search

MENU button ▶ Local Search

Select a place via Local Search database as the destination.

1. Rotate \ to select a category (e.g., Community). Press .

2. Rotate \ to select a subcategory. Press .

When you select Search by keyword, the list of appropriate categories is displayed.

The screen in this section may differ from the actual ones.

Local Search is a subscription service. For more information, contact an Acura dealer or visit owners.acura.com (U.S.) or www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink (Canada).
Entering a Destination

Local Search

3. Rotate 🔄 to select an item. Press 🔄.

4. Set the route to your destination.
   ➡️ Calculating the Route P. 151

The following items are available:
- **Search Nearby**: Finds the nearest POI around your vehicle.
- **Search from Map**: Selects a POI by scrolling the Interface Dial on the map screen.
- **Search from Destination**: Selects a POI around the destination. Search the category by scrolling the Interface Dial.
Enter a Destination

**Place Name**

MENU button ➤ Place Name

Enter the name of a place (e.g., business, hotel, restaurant) stored in the map database to use as the destination.

1. Enter a place name.
2. Move ⬅️ to select OK to display a list of matching hits. Press ⬅️.

3. Rotate ⬅️ to select a place name from the list. Press ⬅️.
   - If the place name is in multiple categories, the categories are displayed when you select it.

Place Name in Multiple Categories P. 142

4. Set the route to your destination.
   - Calculating the Route P. 151

Continued
Entering a Destination ▶ Place Name

Place Name in Multiple Categories

If the place name is in multiple categories of the map database, the following screen is displayed.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select a place name. Press 📱.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select a subcategory. Press 📱.

Matching letters are highlighted.
3. Rotate 🔄 to select a place. Select 🔄 and press 🔄.
4. Set the route to your destination.
   - **Calculating the Route** P. 151

**Place Name in Multiple Categories**
- Move 🔄 to select Sort by City or Sort by Distance.
Entering a Destination ➤ Place Phone Number

Place Phone Number

MENU button ➤ More Search Methods ➤ Place Phone Number

Select a destination by phone number. Only phone numbers in the database are recognized.

1. Enter the area code and phone number.
2. Rotate to select OK. Press .
3. Set the route to your destination. 

Calculating the Route P. 151

Phone numbers of private residences entered in your address book are not stored in the database and thus cannot be used to search for a destination.

A list is displayed if there are multiple locations in the database with the same phone number. Rotate to select a place from the list. Press .
Download POI

Select a place imported into the navigation system as the destination.

1. Rotate to select a category from the list. Press .

2. Rotate to select a place. Press .

3. Set the route to your destination. 
   - Calculating the Route P. 151

If you select From AcuraLink, you can download POI data stored on the AcuraLink® server.
**Entering a Destination**

**Scenic Route**

MENU button ➤ More Search Methods ➤ Scenic Route

Select a scenic road as a destination (U.S. and Canada only).

1. Rotate 🔄 to select a state/province. Press 🔄.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select a scenic road. Press 🔄.

3. Set the route to your destination. ✅ Calculating the Route P. 151

If you select a scenic road that runs through multiple states or provinces, only the portion of the road in the selected state or province is displayed.
Entering a Destination

Intersection

MENU button ➤ More Search Methods ➤ Intersection

Select the intersection of two streets as the destination. The state or province for your current location is displayed at the top of the screen (e.g., California).

1. Rotate to select the intersection search method. Press .
2. Set the route to your destination. ➤ Calculating the Route P. 151

The following options are available:
- City: Selects the city where the intersection is located. You are prompted to enter the name of the two intersecting streets. ➤ Selecting a City P. 131
- Street: Selects the two intersecting streets. The city or cities that the streets are located in are displayed. ➤ Selecting a Street P. 132
- Change State (U.S.)/Change Province (Canada): Selects the state or province. ➤ Selecting the State or Province P. 129

If there is more than one intersection, you are prompted to select the intersection. If the two streets that you have selected do not intersect, no intersection is entered.

If the intersection is outside the state or province you are currently in, rotate to select Change State/Change Province. ➤ Selecting the State or Province P. 129

It is usually easier to select Street to find the streets first. The city or cities that the streets are in will be displayed. If you select City and your city is not listed, it may be part of a larger metropolitan area. Try entering the street first.
Entering a Destination ► Map Input

Map Input

MENU button ► More Search Methods ► Map Input

Use the Interface Dial to manually select an icon or a location on the map screen as the destination.
You are prompted to define the map area to display.

1. Rotate to select an item. Press .

The following items are available:
• Current Position: Your current location is centered on the map.
• State (U.S.)/Province (Canada): You are prompted to select the state or province.
  Selecting the State or Province P. 129
• City: You are prompted to select the city.
  Selecting a City P. 131
• USA, Canada and Mexico: Your current location is displayed on a map of the country.
2. Scroll the map to position the cursor over your desired destination, adjusting the map scale as necessary. If the address is not the desired location, scroll the map to another location and try again.

3. Press 🎯 to display the route calculation menu.

   🎯 Calculating the Route P. 151

4. Rotate ⬇️ to select Set as Destination. Press 🎯.

   🎯 Map Input

   **Auto Zoom**  
   Press 🎯 repeatedly on the map to zoom in (to the scale 1/4 mile (400 m)) while scrolling the map.

   Information icons are displayed at scales from 1 mile to 1/4 mile (1.6 km to 400 m). Place/landmark icons are displayed at 1/8 mile (200 m) or less. Roads are displayed at 1/4 mile (400 m) or less.

   If you select multiple icons within the cursor radius, you are prompted to select one of the items from a list.

   🎯 Selecting a Destination on the Map P. 178
Entering a Destination Coordinate

Coordinate

MENU button ▶ More Search Methods ▶ Coordinate

Specify a location using latitude and longitude map coordinates.

1. Enter the latitude and select OK.
2. Enter the longitude and select OK.

3. Move < to scroll the map to position the cursor over your desired destination, adjusting the map scale as necessary.
   ▶ If the address is not the desired location, scroll to another location and try again.

4. Press to display the route calculation menu.

Calculating the Route P. 151

5. Rotate to select Set as Destination. Press .

Latitude and longitude must be entered up to the seconds' value.
Calculating the Route

This section describes how to calculate your route.

1. Rotate \( \circ \) to select Set as Destination. Press \( \circ \).
   - The system calculates and displays the route line on the map screen.
     - Route Line P. 156
   - Move \( \circ \) to scroll the map around the destination.

The following options are available:

- **View Routes**: Displays three different routes.
  - Viewing the Routes P. 153
- **Route Preference**: Move \( \circ \) to select Route Preference to change the route preferences (calculating method).
  - Route Preference P. 56

The straight line distance (as the crow flies, not driving distance) and direction to the destination are shown.

You cannot use voice commands while the system is calculating the route.

Search Nearby
You can find the nearest place/landmark (e.g., nearest gas station) by specifying a category.

- Find Nearest Place P. 177

Call
You can place a telephone call to the destination phone number.

- Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 266

Save to Address Book
You can add the destination address to the address book.

- Adding an Address Book Entry P. 42

Edit/Delete Entry
You can edit or delete the address book entry.

- Editing an Address Book Entry P. 44
- Deleting an Address Book Entry P. 45
2. Follow the route guidance to your destination.
   ➤ Driving to Your Destination
   P. 154
   ▶ The system provides you with pop-up messages if your route passes through unverified areas, avoid areas, or areas with traffic restrictions.

Calculating the Route

Edit Home Entry
You can edit your home address entry.
   ➤ Home Address P. 48

More Info
You can view detailed information about the destination.
Viewing the Routes

View three different routes to your destination.

Rotate ⏰ to select a route. Press ↕.
▶ The travel distance and estimated travel time is displayed for each route.
▶ The system calculates and displays the route line on the map screen.

Using the server route *

The following items are available:
• Quick: Displays the route with the shortest travel time.
• Direct: Displays the route with the shortest travel distance.
• Eco: Displays the route with the best fuel efficiency.

Canadian models
Server Routes is a subscription service. For more information, contact an Acura dealer or visit www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink.

* Not available on all models
Driving to Your Destination

This section describes how to follow the route guidance to your destination, receive traffic information and choose the icons displayed on the map screen.

Viewing the Route

Map Screen

After calculating the route to your destination, the route is displayed on the map screen.

Map Screen Legend P. 9
As you drive, the system tracks your position on the map in real time and provides guidance as you approach each guidance point on the route.

During Route Guidance P. 11

Viewing the Route

You can change the map scale by rotating  

If you scroll the map while en route, the time and distance to destination indicators are replaced with an indicator showing distance from the current vehicle position.

You can display only the map screen or a split map-guidance screen.

Guidance Mode P. 65
Driving to Your Destination

Viewing the Route

The guidance screen offers an alternative way to view your route.

- The next guidance point is displayed as you approach each guidance point on the route.
- You can also view a list of guidance directions.

Guidance Screen

A visual guide helps you check the guidance screen.

- Guidance Screen P. 11

Turn-by-Turn Directions

The next guidance point appears on the multi-information display.

- Turn-by-Turn Directions P. 11

You can turn this feature on or off using the multi-information display. See the Owner’s Manual for instructions.
Driving to Your Destination
Viewing the Route

Route Line
When driving on verified streets, the route line is light blue. The route line display changes when driving on unverified streets:

- If Unverified Routing is Off, the route line uses verified streets only (when possible). If Straight Line Guide is set to On, a pink “vector line” pointing directly towards your destination is displayed.

- If Unverified Routing is On, the route line changes to a blue-pink line to indicate that the route line uses unverified streets.

You can set Unverified Routing to Off to follow your own route to the destination. If Unverified Routing is On, be aware that unverified streets may not be displayed accurately.

The route line may also consist of red, orange, or green segments when traffic information is displayed.

* Not available on all models
Deviating From the Planned Route

If you leave the calculated route, the system automatically recalculates a route to the desired destination based on your current location and direction.

- Route Preference P. 56

Recalculating...
Driving to Your Destination ➤ Viewing the Route

### Tracking Dots
You can display a series of dots (breadcrumbs) to track the path you are taking. If needed, you can follow the dots back to the mapped road you originally left.

**Display Tracking** P. 86

A message “Not on a digitized road” may appear when you drive 1/2 mile (800 m) away from a mapped road.

Breadcrumbs may occasionally be displayed in urban areas, such as large parking lots in shopping malls, in new subdivisions where the roads are not yet in the database, or in areas where a GPS signal is unavailable, such as in a parking garage.

Breadcrumbs are limited to approximately 150 miles (240 km). Breadcrumbs at the beginning of the trail are deleted if you exceed that distance.

Breadcrumbs are displayed only at 1/20, 1/8, 1/4, and 1/2 mile (80, 200, 400, and 800 m) map scales.
Listening to Voice Guidance

As you approach each guidance point, a pop-up window is displayed on the map screen with instructions for you to follow. Voice guidance for each guidance point is also provided.

Typically, you hear three prompts:
• 1/2 mile (800 m) from the guidance point (2 miles (3 km) on freeway/highway)
• 1/4 mile (400 m) from the guidance point (1 mile (1.5 km) on freeway/highway)
• Just before the guidance point

To replay voice guidance, rotate the ENTER button (on map) to select Voice in the Map Menu.

If you select Voice between guidance points, voice guidance for the next guidance point is provided.

You can turn voice guidance OFF if you prefer. On the map screen, press the ENTER button to display the Map Menu. Select Guidance Volume and adjust the volume level to 0.

You can also adjust Guidance Volume by rotating the volume knob or using the VOL buttons on the steering wheel during route guidance or voice command confirmations.

When driving in unverified areas, the phrase “if possible” is inserted before each voice guidance prompt.

Voice in the Map Menu may be grayed out if:
• The system is in process of gathering the route guidance information.
• The vehicle is out of the road (e.g., pulling in a parking lot).

The timing of voice guidance varies depending on the type of road you are on and the distance to the next guidance point.
Driving to Your Destination

Reaching a Waypoint

When you reach a waypoint, a pop-up message is displayed. You can continue or pause the route guidance.

Rotate to select No to pause the route guidance. Press . Select Yes to continue the guidance.

Resuming the Route Guidance

You can resume the route guidance in the following ways:

- Restart the engine when you stop your car (e.g., to rest, stop for gas, etc.).
  - Resuming Your Trip P. 180
- Select Resume Guidance from the navigation menu or the map menu.
  - Map Menu P. 161
  - Changing Your Route P. 168
Displaying the Map Menu

Use the Map Menu to control the icons displayed on the screen and to display traffic information and messages. You can also use the Map Menu to find locations or to cancel the route.

1. On the map screen, press . The Map Menu is displayed on the map screen.

2. Rotate to select an item. Press .

The following items are available:

- **Voice**: Select to hear the voice guidance when en route.
  - **Listening to Voice Guidance** P. 159
- **Guidance Volume**: Adjusts the navigation system volume level.
  - **Sound and Beep Settings** P. 29
• **Map/Guidance:** Allows you to select the map and guidance settings (display mode, icons to display on the map, map orientation, map color, and 3D view angle), display your current location, and an overview of the map features.
  - Guidance Mode P. 65
  - Showing Icons on Map P. 73
  - Color P. 75
  - View (Map Orientation) P. 78
  - 3D Angle Adjustment P. 79
  - Current Location P. 81
  - Map Legend P. 82
• **Pause Guidance:** Pauses your current route.
  - Pausing the Route P. 169
• **Resume Guidance:** Resumes your current route. This item is displayed while the route guidance is paused.
• **Hide Traffic Flow:** Hides the current traffic flow indicator on the map screen.
  - Hide Traffic Flow P. 163
• **Display Traffic Flow:** Displays the current traffic flow indicator on the map screen. This item is displayed while the current traffic flow indicator is hidden.
• **Directions:** Displays a list of the guidance points.
  - Directions P. 163
• **Search Nearby:** Allows you to find the nearest place/landmark (e.g., nearest gas station) by specifying a category. You can then add the location to the list of destinations, set as a waypoint, or set as your destination.
  - Find Nearest Place P. 177
• **Traffic Incidents:** Displays a list of the traffic incidents around your current location or on your current route.
  - Traffic Rerouting™ P. 165

**Map Menu**

**Directions**
The system provides freeway/highway exit information only in the U.S.

**Traffic Incidents**
You must be in or near a traffic-enabled city to receive coverage for that area. Traffic information is available in certain areas in the lower 48 states.

**Traffic Information** P. 406

**Canadian models**
You must have an AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic™ subscription to receive traffic information.

**AcuraLink®** P. 314

The incident icons are displayed on the 5 mile (8 km) or less map scale.

**Map Scale and Functions** P. 83
Hide Traffic Flow

**ENTER** button (on map) ➤ **Hide Traffic Flow**

Hide the traffic flow indicator on the map screen. Press the **ENTER** button and select **Display Traffic Flow** to display the traffic flow indicator on the map screen.

Directions

**ENTER** button (on map) ➤ **Directions**

Display a list of the guidance points on your route for your confirmation.

1. Rotate 🜐 to select a guidance point from the list. Press 🌊.
   - The system displays a map of the guidance point.

2. Press 🌊 to select **Back to list** or press the **BACK** button to return to the previous screen.
Freeway/Highway Exit Information

You can scroll the map and select a  (Freeway/Highway exit information) icon on the map screen to display the Freeway/Highway exit information. The icon is only displayed if there is exit information available.

Icons are displayed only at 1/4, 1/2, or 1 mile (400 m, 800 m, or 1.6 km) scale.

The system provides freeway/highway exit information only in the U.S.

The route guidance information is automatically deleted when you reach your destination.

1. Rotate  to select an exit from the list. Press .

2. Rotate  to select a list item. Press .

- Move  or  to display information for different exits.
- You can set the route to your destination.

Calculating the Route P. 151
Traffic Rerouting™

When driving to your destination, the system automatically searches for a faster route based on traffic flow information and traffic incidents.

- Traffic Information*/AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic* P. 10
- Traffic Rerouting P. 60

Traffic information is only available in certain areas. Automatic traffic rerouting may not provide a detour route depending on circumstances. The route is recalculated only when Traffic Rerouting is set to On.

Canadian models
This feature requires an AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic™ subscription. AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic™ is a subscription service. For more information, contact an Acura dealer or www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink.

* Not available on all models

Continued
Traffic Rerouting™ Manually

ENTER button (on map) ➤ Traffic Incidents

Manually avoid specific incidents and/or congestion on your route:

1. Rotate ‏△‏ to select an incident from the list. Press ‏▼‏.
   ▶ The system displays the map screen and the incident location.

2. Rotate ‏△‏ to select Avoid. Press ‏▼‏.
   ▶ Repeat step 1 to 2 as necessary.

Traffic rerouting is only available in certain areas.

You must be in or near a traffic-enabled city to receive coverage for that area. Traffic information is available in certain areas in the lower 48 states, Hawaii, and some cities in Canada.

You can choose to avoid up to 10 traffic incidents. It is not always possible for the system to calculate a route that avoids all traffic incidents or specific traffic incidents you select.

The “On Route” tab on the Traffic List screen is only available during route guidance.

You cannot select an incident to avoid from the “All” tab.

You can also detour around a traffic incident manually if you encounter an unexpected obstacle.

Taking a Detour P. 176
3. Move ☐ to select **Recalculate Route**. Press ☐.
   - The system recalculates a detour route that avoids the traffic incidents.
Changing Your Route

MENU button (when en route)

This section describes how to alter your route, add an interim “waypoint” (pit stop), choose a different destination, cancel your current destination, and continue your trip after stopping.

Rotate 🡑 to select an item. Press 🡑.

The following items are available:

- **Voice**: Select to hear the voice guidance when en route.
  - Listening to Voice Guidance P. 159
- **Destination List**: Shows a list of waypoints. You can delete waypoints or edit the order of them.
  - Editing the Destination List P. 174
- **Pause Guidance**: Pauses your current route.
  - Pausing the Route P. 169
- **Resume Guidance**: Resumes your current route. This item is displayed while the route guidance is paused.
- **Cancel Route**: Cancels the route guidance.
  - Canceling the Route P. 169
- **View Routes**: Displays three different routes.
  - Viewing the Routes P. 153
• Change Route Preference: Changes the route preferences (calculating method).
  ➤ Route Preference P. 56
• Detour: Calculates a detour route.
  ➤ Taking a Detour P. 176
• Avoid Streets: Avoids streets along your route.
  ➤ Avoiding Streets P. 176

Pausing the Route
➤ MENU button (when en route) ➤ Pause Guidance

Pause the route guidance and return to the map screen. The destination icons and all waypoint flags remain displayed on the map. Press the MENU button when en route and select Resume Guidance to resume the route guidance.

Canceling the Route
➤ MENU button (when en route) ➤ Cancel Route

Cancel the route guidance and remove the destination and all waypoints from the destination list. The system then returns to the map screen.
Adding Waypoints

Add up to four waypoints (pit stops) along the route to your destination. Waypoints are displayed on the map screen as small, numbered red flags. The route follows the waypoints in the order they are listed in the Destination List.

Waypoints allow you to stop for gas or food, for example, and then continue on to your destination.

Press the NAV button to return to the map screen without adding a waypoint at any time.

The search corridor used for adding waypoints can be adjusted.

You can delete waypoints or edit the order of waypoints in the destination list.

The search corridor used for adding waypoints can be adjusted.

You can delete waypoints or edit the order of waypoints in the destination list.
Adding Waypoints from the Route Menu

1. Rotate to select a search method to add a waypoint. Press .

The following items are available:
- **Search Around**: Searches in a spiral pattern around the location you select.
- **Search Along**: Searches within a “corridor” on either side of the location you select.

2. Rotate to select a waypoint category (e.g., GAS STATION). Press .

Continued
Changing Your Route

Adding Waypoints

3. Rotate 🔄 to select a place. Press 🔄. The waypoint is added to the Destination List.

4. Rotate 🔄 to select a location and move the order of destinations. Press 🔄.

5. Move 🔄 and rotate 🔄 to select Start Route. Press 🔄. The route is automatically recalculated and displayed on the map screen.
Changing Your Route

Adding Waypoints

1. Rotate \( \circlearrowleft \) to select a method to enter a waypoint.
   - **Entering a Destination** P. 126
     - A new destination is added to the end of the Destination list.

2. Move \( \circlearrowleft \) and rotate \( \circlearrowright \) to select **Start Route**. Press \( \circlearrowright \).
   - The route is automatically recalculated and displayed on the map screen.

Adding Waypoints from the Navigation Menu

**MENU** button (when en route) ➤ **Destination List** ➤ **Add New Destination**

You can edit the order of waypoints and destination.

**Editing the Destination List** P. 174
Changing Your Route

Editing the Destination List

- **MENU button (when en route) ➤ Destination List**
  
  1. Move 🕒 and rotate 🔄 to select *Edit Order*. Press 🔄.
  
  2. Rotate 🔄 to select a list item to move. Press 🔄.
  
  3. Rotate 🔄 to select a new location. Press 🔄.
  
  4. Move 🕒 and rotate 🔄 to select *Start Route*. Press 🔄.
     - The route is automatically recalculated and displayed on the map screen.

- **Editing the Order of Waypoints**

  Move 🕒 to rotate 🔄 to select *Show All on Map* to display the destination and waypoints on the map screen.
### Deleting Waypoints

**MENU button (when en route) ➤ Destination List**

1. Rotate кнопку to select a list item to delete. Press кнопку.

2. Rotate кнопку to select Delete. Press кнопку.

3. Rotate кнопку to select Yes. Press кнопку.

**Deleting Waypoints**

Move кнопку and rotate кнопку to select **Delete All** to delete the destination and all the waypoints.

Select **Show on Map** to display the waypoint on the map screen.
Taking a Detour

MENU button (when en route) ➤ Detour

Calculate a detour route manually. The system attempts to calculate a new route by avoiding the next 5 miles (8 km) (while on a freeway/highway) or 1 mile (1.6 km) (while on a surface street).

Avoiding Streets

MENU button (when en route) ➤ Avoid Streets

Select a street or streets along your route to avoid.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select the street you want to avoid. Press 🏷. ➤ Repeat the procedure to avoid other streets.


Taking a Detour

The detour option is convenient if you encounter an unexpected obstacle such as a road closure or extremely heavy traffic congestion.

Avoiding Streets

Avoiding certain streets is convenient if you know of road construction, road closures, or excessive traffic along the route.

You cannot choose specific streets you want to use, only those to avoid. However, you can select intersections or waypoints (places/landmarks) that the system will use in your route.

Adding Waypoints P. 170

You can store up to 10 streets to avoid. You cannot avoid your current street or the streets of your waypoint(s) or destination (system beeps if selected).
Changing Your Destination

There are several methods you can use to change the route destination.

**Find Nearest Place**

**ENTER button (on map) ➤ Search Nearby**

Search for the nearest place/landmark on the map screen and set it as your destination.

1. Rotate to select Search Nearby. Press 📌.
2. Rotate to select a category type. Press 📌.
3. Rotate to select a place. Press 📌.
4. Rotate to select Set as Destination. Press 📌.
5. Move to select Clear Current Route. Press 📌.

- The route is automatically recalculated and displayed on the map screen.
- Rotate to edit the order to set the location as a new waypoint. Press 📌.
Changing Your Destination

Selecting a Destination on the Map

Select a new destination when en route by selecting a location on the map.

1. Scroll the map to position the cursor over your desired destination, adjusting the map scale as necessary. Press .
   - If the address displayed is not the desired location, press the BACK button and repeat the procedure.

2. Rotate  to select Set as Destination. Press .
   - Calculating the Route P. 151

   - The route is automatically recalculated and displayed on the map screen.
   - Rotate  to edit the order to set the location as a new waypoint. Press .

If there is more than one icon or street under the map cursor, you are prompted to select the item from a list.

Select an item

Traffic
Map Icon
Exit Info
Street
Address Book/Home
Place Category

Rotate  to select an item. Press .
Entering a New Destination

MENU button (when en route) ➤ Destination

Enter a new destination using the Destination Menu screen even when you are en route.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select a method to enter a new destination.
   ➤ Entering a Destination P. 126
   After entering a new destination, the address is displayed on the Calculate Route screen.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select Set as Destination. Press 🔄.

   The route is automatically recalculated and displayed on the map screen.
   Rotate 🔄 to edit the order to set the location as a new waypoint. Press 🔄.
Resuming Your Trip

Stop your vehicle en route (e.g., to rest, stop for gas, etc.), and then continue on your route.
If you did not complete your route, the Continue Trip screen is displayed when you restart your vehicle.

Rotate 🔄 to select Set as Destination. Press 🔄.
- You can continue on the same route.
- Move < to scroll the map around the destination.
- Press the BACK button to cancel your destination.

- View Routes: Displays three different routes.
  🚢 Viewing the Routes P. 153
- Route Preference: Move 🔄 to select Route Preference to change the route preferences (calculating method).
  🚢 Route Preference P. 56

The Continue Trip screen has the same options as when you calculate a route.

You can also cancel your destination by pressing any hard button except the ▼ button.

Search Nearby
You can find the nearest place/landmark (e.g., nearest gas station) by specifying a category.

Call
You can place a telephone call to the destination phone number.

Save to Address Book
You can add the destination address to the address book.

Edit/Delete Entry
You can edit or delete the address book entry.

Edit Home Entry
You can edit your home address entry.

More Info
You can view detailed information about the destination.
Audio

This section describes how to operate the audio system. You can play music from a wide array of media sources, and control the audio system using the audio buttons, the Interface Dial, or voice control.

Audio System .................................................. 182
About Your Audio System.............................. 182
USB Ports....................................................... 183
Auxiliary Input Jack ........................................ 185
Setting Audio Shortcuts ................................. 186
Customizing Audio Source............................. 187
Audio Remote Controls ................................ 188
Steering Wheel Controls .............................. 188
Audio Settings............................................. 190
Adjusting the Sound ..................................... 193
Playing FM/AM Radio .................................... 194
Selecting FM/AM Mode ............................... 194
Audio Screen Control............................... 195
Audio Menu................................................ 198
Playing SiriusXM® Radio .............................. 200
Selecting SiriusXM® Mode........................... 200
Audio Screen Control.................................. 201
Audio Menu................................................... 215
SiriusXM® Radio Service............................ 218
Playing a Disc.............................................. 220
Selecting Disc Mode................................. 220
Audio Screen Control.................................. 221
Audio Menu................................................ 222
Recommended CDs................................. 225
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio........ 227
Selecting HDD Mode................................ 227
Recording a Music CD to HDD.................... 228
Audio Screen Control............................... 229
Audio Menu................................................ 230
Playing an iPod........................................... 239
Selecting iPod Mode................................ 240
Audio Screen Control............................... 241
Audio Menu................................................ 243
Song By Voice™ (SBV)............................... 246
Playing Internet Radio................................. 251
Selecting Internet Radio Mode................. 251
Pandora® Menu* ..................................... 252
Aha™ Radio Menu......................................... 254
Playing a USB Flash Drive....................... 256
Selecting USB Mode................................. 257
Audio Screen Control............................... 258
Audio Menu................................................ 259
Playing Bluetooth® Audio.......................... 262
Selecting Bluetooth® Audio Mode............. 262
Audio Screen Control............................... 263

* Not available on all models
Audio System

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and the SiriusXM® Radio service. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, Hard Disc Drive (HDD) audio, USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone and Bluetooth® devices.
You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

SiriusXM® Radio is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio, contact a dealer.

SiriusXM® Radio Service P. 218

SiriusXM® Radio is available in the U.S. and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM® is a registered trademark of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

Video CDs, DVDs, and 3 in (80 mm) mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

When the screen is viewed through polarized sunglasses, a rainbow pattern may appear on the screen due to optical characteristics of the screen. If this is disturbing, please operate the screen without polarized sunglasses.
USB Ports

■ In the front console compartment
The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive and connecting a cellular phone and charging device.

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

■ On the back of the front console compartment
The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.

We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.

Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.

Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disc drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.

We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.

Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer’s instructions provided with the iPod or visit the following website:


The USB port can supply up to 1.0A or 2.5A of power. It does not output 1.0A or 2.5A unless requested by the device.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

* Not available on all models
In the rear console compartment
The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

On the back of the rear console compartment
The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

USB Ports
This port is for battery charge only. You cannot play music even if you have connected a music player to it.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

* Not available on all models
Auxiliary Input Jack

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.

1. Open the AUX cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 in (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
   - The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

Reactivate the Audio System

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the (Power) button for more than two seconds.
   - The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

You can return to the AUX mode by selecting Change Source on the Audio menu screen or Source on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
Setting Audio Shortcuts

You can store up to six radio stations, and HDD audio album/play lists when playing AM, FM, SiriusXM® radio, or HDD audio.

1. Select **Shortcuts**.
2. Tune to a radio station or select a song.
   - Playing FM/AM Radio P. 194
   - Playing SiriusXM® Radio P. 200
   - Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio P. 227
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Edit** or **No Entry**.
   - If you select **No Entry**, go to step 6.
5. Select **Add**.
6. Select the preset icon you want to store the station or song to.

Storing a Station or Song

You can also preset a station or song by pressing and holding the preset icon you want to store that station or song after step 3.
Deleting a Preset Station or Song

1. Select Shortcuts.
2. Select Audio.
3. Select Edit.
4. Select Delete.
5. Select the preset icon with the radio station or a song you want to delete.

Customizing Audio Source

You can customize order of the source list icons.

1. Select Source.
2. Select Edit Order from the second screen.
3. Select two icons you want to swap.
4. Select Done.

► Select Default to reset the customized order.

Customizing Audio Source

This operation is not allowed while the vehicle is in motion.
Audio Remote Controls

Steering Wheel Controls

Allows you to operate the audio system while driving.

**SOURCE Button**
Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
FM → AM → SiriusXM® → CD → HDD → USB → iPod → Bluetooth® Audio → Pandora®, Aha® → AUX

**Left Selector Wheel**
- **Roll Up:** To increase the volume.
- **Roll Down:** To decrease the volume.
- **Push:** To mute. Push again to unmute.
- **Move to the right:** To select the next preset radio station.
- **Move to the left:** To select the previous preset radio station.
- **Move to the right and hold:** To select the next strong station.
- **Move to the left and hold:** To select the previous strong station.

**When listening to a CD, HDD, iPod, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio**
- **Move to the right:** To skip to the next song.
- **Move to the left:** To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- **Move to the right and hold:** To go to the next folder. (Bluetooth® Audio only)
- **Move to the left and hold:** To go to the previous folder. (Bluetooth® Audio only)

---

* Not available on all models
• When listening to a CD, HDD or USB flash drive
  
  Move to the right and hold: To skip to the next folder.
  Move to the left and hold: To go back to the previous folder.
• When listening to Pandora® and Aha™
  
  Move to the right: To skip to the next song.
  Move to the right and hold: To select the next station.
  Move to the left and hold: To select the previous station.

* Not available on all models
Audio Settings

1. Move < or > to select an audio mode you want to set.
2. Rotate ☰ to select an item. Press ☰.

The following items are available:

SXMTab

- **SportsFlash** (SiriusXM® mode):
  - **Notification**: Sets whether a notification comes on the screen when the system receives a sports alert. If you select **Enable (one time)**, the system enables the notification until turning the vehicle off.
  - **Beep**: Turns on or off the beep that sounds every time the pop-up message interrupts other audio mode screen.
  - **Favorite Teams**: Stores up to five favorite teams. Certain sports may require additional station subscriptions.

- **Play Song from Beginning** (SiriusXM® mode): Turns on or off the Tune Start function that begins playing the current song from the beginning when you tune to a music channel.

- **Traffic & Weather Now Setup** (SiriusXM® mode): Selects a city for using the SiriusXM® traffic and weather information.

- **Channel Art** (SiriusXM® mode): Turns on and off the channel art display.

The “Play Song from Beginning” function is based on TuneStart™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneStart™ is a registered trademark of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.
Audio Settings

CD/HDD tab
- **Recording from CD** (CD mode): Selects whether the songs on music CDs are automatically recorded to the HDD.
- **Recording Quality** (CD mode): Selects the quality of the music files recorded to the HDD.
- **HDD Info** (HDD mode): Displays the HDD capacity.
- **Update Gracenote Album Info** (CD or HDD mode): Updates the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) from CD or from USB.
- **Delete All HDD Data** (HDD mode): Resets all the menu and customized settings, and delete all music data on the HDD.

Bluetooth tab
- **Bluetooth Device List** (Bluetooth® Audio mode): Edits or deletes Bluetooth Audio device paired.
- **Connect Bluetooth Audio Device** (Bluetooth® Audio, Pandora®+ or Aha™ mode): Connects, disconnects, or pairs a Bluetooth® Audio device to HFL.

* Not available on all models
**Audio Settings**

**DVD tab**
- **DVD Auto Play** (DVD mode): Turns the auto play feature on or off.
- **Audio Language** (DVD mode): Selects a language for the audio that is available on the DVD.
- **Subtitle Language** (DVD mode): Selects a language for the subtitle that is available on the DVD.
- **Menu Language** (DVD mode): Selects a language for the DVD menu that is available on the DVD.
- **Dynamic Range** (DVD mode): Sets whether to control the range of the loud and low sounds.

**Other tab**
- **Source Select Popup**: Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the AUDIO button is pressed.
- **HD Radio Mode** (AM/FM mode): Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analogue waves only.
- **Cover Art** (CD (MP3/WMA/AAC), iPod, USB, Pandora® or Aha™ mode): Turns on and off the cover art display.
- **Default**: Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio Settings group as default.

* Not available on all models
Adjusting the Sound

MENU button ► Sound

Interface Dial
Adjust the sound bass, treble, fader, and balance. You can also adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center and subwoofer speakers. In addition, you can set Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC) and DTS Neural Surround.

1. Rotate to select the sound mode to adjust. Press .
2. Rotate to adjust the desired level. Press .

Select More.
2. Select Sound.
3. Use or other icon to adjust the setting.
   ► Use the icons to turn the page.
   ► Select to go back to the previous screen.

The SVC has four modes: Off, Low, Mid, and High.

SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

DTS Neural Surround is a trademark of DTS, Inc.

When available, DTS Neural Surround converts stereo sound into surround sound.

Select Off, Low, Mid or High for the SVC setting.

You can also adjust the sound to select on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

Select Off, Low, Mid or High for the SVC setting.

You can also adjust the sound to select on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
Playing FM/AM Radio

Selecting FM/AM Mode

1. Press the **MENU** button. (in AUDIO mode)
2. Rotate 
   to select **Change Source**. Press .
3. Rotate 
   to select the frequency band (FM, AM). Press .
   ▶ The band and frequency are displayed on the audio/information screen.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select **Source**.
2. Select the frequency band (FM, AM) icon.
   ▶ The band and frequency are displayed on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

Selecting FM/AM Mode

You can control the AM/FM radio using voice commands.

**Radio FM Commands** P. 417

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

The radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands:
- AM band: 530 to 1710 kHz
- FM band: 87.7 to 107.9 MHz

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.
Audio Screen Control

Control the audio system through the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

Interface Dial

Rotate ⏎️ to select a station from the list. Press ⏎️.
- Rotate ⏎️ and select Refresh to update the station list at any time.
- Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

Audio Menu P. 198
Playing FM/AM Radio

Audio Screen Control

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

The following items are available:

- **Tune**: Tune the radio frequency. On the preset screen, select and hold to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

- **Search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.**

- **Preset Number**: Select and hold a desired number where you want to store the station. Select to listen to a preset station.

- **More**: Display the menu items.

  **Audio Menu** P. 198

- **Scan**: Scans for stations with a strong signal in the current band and plays a 10-second sample. Select **Stop Scan** to stop scanning and play the current selection.
■ Preset Memory

**Interface Dial**
To store a station:
1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Move \(\rightarrow\) to select **Presets**.
3. Rotate \(\uparrow\) to select a desired number on the preset station list.
4. Press and hold \(\uparrow\) a few seconds to store the current station.
To listen to a stored station, rotate \(\uparrow\) to select the preset number. Press \(\uparrow\).

**On Demand Multi-Use Display™**
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station on preset screen.
2. Select and hold a desired number.
To listen to a stored station, select the preset number.
Playing FM/AM Radio

Audio Menu

MENU button (in FM/AM mode)

Rotate ☰ to select an item. Press ☰.

The following items are available:

- **Sound**: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker’s sound. 
  
  Adjusting the Sound P. 193
- **Refresh Station List**: Updates a station list.
- **Radio Text**: Displays the text information broadcast by the current RDS station.
- **Save Preset**: Stores the station into the preset memory.
- **Change Source**: Changes the audio source mode.
- **Scan**: Scans for stations with a strong signal in the current band and plays a 10-second sample. Select **Stop Scan** to stop scanning and play the current selection.
- **Tune/Seek**: Tunes the radio to the frequency you select. Rotate ☰ to select a frequency, then press ☰.
- **HD Subchannel**: Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected.

* Not available on all models
1. Select More.
2. Select a setting item.

The following items are available:
- **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  - *Adjusting the Sound* P. 193
- **Save Preset**: Stores the station into the preset memory.
- **Screen Settings**: Adjusts the screen’s preferences.
  - *Changing the Screen Settings* P. 89
- **Scan**: Scans for stations with a strong signal in the current band and plays a 10-second sample. Select **Stop Scan** to stop scanning and play the current selection.
- **HD Subchannel**: Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected.

* Not available on all models
Playing SiriusXM® Radio

Selecting SiriusXM® Mode

**Interface Dial**
1. Press the **MENU** button. (in AUDIO mode)
2. Rotate to select **Change Source**. Press .
3. Rotate to select **SXM**. Press .
   - The category, channel list, and presets are displayed on the audio/information screen.

**On Demand Multi-Use Display™**
1. Select **Source**.
2. Select the SiriusXM icon.
   - The category and channel are displayed on the On Demand Multi-Use display™.

**Radio SXM Commands** P. 417

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio channels load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded, you can scroll up or down to make your selections.
Audio Screen Control

Control the audio system through the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

### Interface Dial

1. **Rotate** 🔄 to select a category. Press 🎭.
   - Move 🔄 if you want to select from the current channel list or presets.

2. **Rotate** 🔄 to select a channel. Press 🎭.
   - Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

[Audio Menu P. 215]
Playing SiriusXM® Radio

Audio Screen Control

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

The following items are available:

- **Category bar** (Tune screen): Select ◄ or ► to search a category.
- **Channel bar**: Select ◄ or ► to search a channel. Select and hold ◄ or ► to search up or down 10 channels.
- **Preset Number** (Preset screen): Select a preset channel. Select and hold to search a channel.
- **Playback**: Display the Playback screen.
  - Replay Function P. 205
- **More**: Display the menu items.
  - Audio Menu P. 215
- **Scan**: Scans for channels in the selected mode or Presets and plays a 10-second sample. Select Stop Scan to stop scanning and play the current selection.
Playing SiriusXM® Radio  Audio Screen Control

■ Preset Memory

**Interface Dial**
To store a channel:
1. Tune to the desired channel.
2. Move to select Presets.
3. Rotate to select a desired number.
4. Press and hold a few seconds to store the current channel.
To listen to a stored channel, rotate to select the preset number. Press ⏯.

**On Demand Multi-Use Display™**
To store a channel:
1. Tune to the desired channel.
2. Select and hold a desired number.
To listen to a stored channel, select the preset number.

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.
■ Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

You can store up to four of your preferred music channels per preset. When multiple channels exist, the music randomly skips between channels.

1. Select a channel you want to store.
2. Select More.
3. Select Save Preset.
4. Select Edit TuneMix.
5. Select a preset number where you want to add a music channel.
6. Select Add.

Select OK or \(\times\) to return the previous screen.

To delete a multi-channel preset:
1. Select More.
2. Select Save Preset.
3. Select Edit TuneMix.
4. Select a multi-channel preset number.
5. Select Delete.
6. Select channel icon.

Select OK or \(\times\) to return the previous screen.

Not all SiriusXM® channels are available to add to multi-channel preset.
Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes broadcast of your currently tuned channel as well as the last 30 minutes broadcast of preset channels, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to a preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

Select an option.

The following options are available:

- **OK**: Returns to previous channel.
- **Play/Pause**: Pauses or plays a storing broadcast.
- **Go to Live**: Returns to real-time broadcast.
- **Skip Down**: Skips to the previously stored channel.
- **Skip Up**: Skips to the next channel.
- **15sec Back**: Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.
- **15sec Skip**: Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.

Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the vehicle is turned on. You can go back to the program from that point. You can no longer replay any program once the vehicle is turned off or if the non-preset channel has been changed. The audio/information screen displays how long the station has been recording in the replay status bar.
Playing SiriusXM® Radio
Audio Screen Control

To play or pause in playback mode:
Rotate to select Play/Pause, press .

Returning to real-time broadcast
Rotate to select Go to Live, press while listening to the playback channel.
Playing SiriusXM® Radio

Audio Screen Control

1. Select Playback.
2. Select an option.

The following options are available:

- **(15sec Back)**: Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.
- **(15sec Skip)**: Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.
- **(Skip Down)**: Skips to the previously stored channel.
- **(Skip Up)**: Skips to the next channel.
- **(Play/Pause)**: Pauses or plays a storing broadcast.
- **(Live)**: Returns to real-time broadcast.
- **OK**: Returns to previous channel.

To play or pause in playback mode:
Select **■**.

**Returning to real-time broadcast**
Select **□** while listening to the playback channel.
Playing SiriusXM® Radio ▶ Audio Screen Control

Replay status display
Display the replay status on the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use display™ when you listen to the playback.

- **Interface Dial**
  - Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
  - Stored length in the memory
  - Replayed segment

- **On Demand Multi-Use Display™**
  - Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
  - Stored length in the memory
  - Replayed segment
SportsFlash™ Alert

While listening to other channels, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from up to five of your favorite teams. The notification message appears on the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™ when receiving sports alerts.

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a sports alert.
2. Select Listen Now.
   - Press the BACK button to return the previous screen.
   - If no operations are performed for 10 seconds, the system returns to the previous audio mode automatically.

The following items are available:

- **Check Later**: Returns to the previous screen and stores the received sports alert in the audio system. If other sports alerts are received in the same game, the notification message appears again.
- **Ignore this Game**: Returns to the previous screen and stores the received sports alert in the audio system. If other sports alerts are received in the same game, the notification message does not appear.

SportsFlash™ is a registered trademark of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.
3. Select an option.

The following options are available:

- **Back**: Returns to the previous screen.
- **Play/Pause**: Pauses or plays a current sports alert.
- **Go to Live**: Returns to real-time broadcast.
- **Skip Down**: Skips to the previously stored sports alert.
- **Skip Up**: Skips to the next stored sports alert.
- **15sec Back**: Select to skip back 15 seconds to the current sports alert. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current sports alert.
- **15sec Skip**: Select to skip forward 30 seconds to the current sports alert. Select and hold to fast-forward the current sports alert.
Playing SiriusXM® Radio
Audio Screen Control

1. Select an item.
   - Select [X] to return to the previous screen.
   - If no operations are performed for 10 seconds, the system returns to the previous screen automatically.

The following items are available:
- **Listen Now**: Plays the received sports alert in the current game.
- **Ignore this Game**: Returns to the previous screen and stores the received sports alert in the audio system. If other sports alerts are received in the same game, the notification message does not appear.
Playing SiriusXM® Radio  Audio Screen Control

2. Select an option.

The following options are available:

- **(15sec Back)**: Select to skip back 15 seconds to the current sports alert. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current sports alert.
- **(15sec Skip)**: Select to skip forward 15 seconds to the current sports alert. Select and hold to fast-forward the current sports alert.
- **(Skip Down)**: Skips to the previously stored sports alert.
- **(Skip Up)**: Skips to the next stored sports alert.
- **(Play/Pause)**: Pauses or plays a current sports alert.
- **(Live)**: Returns to real-time broadcast.
- **Back**: Returns to the previous screen.

Listening to a missed sports alert

*Interface Dial*

If you have missed a sports alert:

1. From the audio screen, press the **MENU** button.
2. Move **○○** to select **Advanced**.
3. Rotate **○○** to select **SportsFlash™**, then press **○○**.
4. Rotate **○○** to select an alert, then press **○○**.
Traffic and Weather Information

MENU button (in SiriusXM® mode) ► Advanced ► Traffic & Weather Now

You can receive the SiriusXM® traffic and weather information. The information displays on the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

Select an option.

The following options are available:

- **Back**: Returns to previous channel.
- **Play/Pause**: Pauses or plays a storing broadcast.
- **Go to Live**: Returns to real-time broadcast.
- **Skip Down**: Skips to the previously stored channel.
- **Skip Up**: Skips to the next channel.
- **15sec Back**: Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current broadcast. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current broadcast.
- **15sec Skip**: Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current broadcast. Select and hold to fast-forward the current broadcast.

Traffic and Weather Information

The traffic and weather information function at SiriusXM® mode only.

When you listen to the traffic and weather information service, set up the applicable city using Traffic & Weather Now Setup.

Audio Settings P. 190

Traffic & Weather Now are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.
Playing SiriusXM® Radio
Audio Screen Control

The following options are available:
- (15sec Back): Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current broadcast. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current broadcast.
- (15sec Skip): Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current broadcast. Select and hold to fast-forward the current broadcast.
- (Skip Down): Skips to the previously stored channel.
- (Skip Up): Skips to the next channel.
- (Play/Pause): Pauses or plays a storing broadcast.
- (Live): Returns to real-time broadcast.
- Back: Returns to previous channel.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™
1. Select More.
2. Select Traffic & Weather Now.
3. Select an option.
Audio Menu

Interface Dial

MENU button (in SiriusXM® mode)
1. Move < or > to select an item.
2. Rotate \ to select an item. Press \.

The following items are available:

General tab
• Sound: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker’s sound.
  ➤ Adjusting the Sound P. 193
• Save Preset: Stores the current channel into the preset memory.
• Change Source: Changes the audio source mode.
• Scan: Selects the scan type. Scans for channels and plays a 10-second sample.
  Select Stop Scan to stop scanning and play the current channel.
• Scan Channels: Scans for categories or channels with a strong signal in the selected mode.
• Scan Songs in Presets: Scans for desired preset channel by songs. Select Skip Up or Skip Down to skip to the next/previous stored selection.
• Playback: Displays the Playback screen.
  ➤ Replay Function P. 205

Audio Menu

The “Scan Songs in Presets” function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

The “Featured Channels” function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

Traffic & Weather Now are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

To find out more about these features, visit www.siriusxm.com (U.S.) or www.siriusxm.ca (Canada).
Advanced tab

- **Traffic & Weather Now**: Displays the SiriusXM® traffic and weather information.
- **Featured Channels**: Displays the list of suggested channels from SiriusXM®. Up to three channel groups can be displayed.
- **View Channel Schedule**: Displays the channel schedule.
- **SportsFlash**: Displays the list of available sports alerts. Up to two sports alerts can be displayed.
1. Select More.
2. Select a setting item.

The following items are available:

- **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  
  - *Adjusting the Sound*  P. 193

- **Save Preset**: Stores the channel into the preset memory. Set to store up to five of your preferred music channels per preset if the *Preset* icon is highlighted.
  
  - *Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)*  P. 204

- **Traffic & Weather Now**: Displays the SiriusXM® traffic and weather information.

- **Scan**: Selects the scan type. Scans for channels and plays a 10-second sample. Select *Stop Scan* to stop scanning and play the current channel.
  
  - *Scan Channels*: Scans for categories or channels with a strong signal in the selected mode.
  
  - *Scan Songs in Presets*: Scans for desired preset channel by songs. Select or to skips to the next/previous stored selection.

- **Tune Mode**: Sets the tune mode.
  
  - *Channel*: Tune to select all available channels.
  
  - *Category*: Tune to select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classic, etc.).

- **Screen Settings**: Adjusts the screen’s preferences.
  
  - *Changing the Screen Settings*  P. 89
Playing SiriusXM® Radio
SiriusXM® Radio Service

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio
1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID in the display: Operate the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ until channel 0 appears.
2. Have your radio ID and credit card number ready, and either call or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio
Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by pressing the SOURCE button on the steering wheel, or through the On Demand Multi-Use Display™, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio
Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
U.S.: SiriusXM® Radio at www.siriusxm.com or (800) 852-9696
Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at www.siriusxm.ca, or 1-877-438-9677

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio
The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
• In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle
• In tunnels
• On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
• Large items carried on the roof rack


**SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages**

**Loading:**
SiriusXM® is loading the audio or program information.

**Channel off air:**
The channel is not currently broadcasting.

**Channel unsubscribed:**
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.

**No signal:**
The signal is too weak in the current location.

**Channel unavailable:**
No such channel exists.

**Check antenna, Antenna disconnected, Antenna shorted:**
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® antenna. Contact a dealer.
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.

**Selecting Disc Mode**

- **Interface Dial**
  1. Insert a disc into the disc slot.
     - The disc automatically begins playing.
  2. Press the MENU button. (in AUDIO mode)
  3. Rotate to select Change Source. Press .
  4. Rotate to select CD. Press .

- **On Demand Multi-Use Display™**
  1. Insert a disc into the disc slot.
     - The disc automatically begins playing.
  2. Select Source.
  3. Select the CD icon.

**NOTICE**

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA and ACC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays Unplayable File, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:
- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD, but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

You can control a CD audio using voice commands.

**Disc Commands** P. 417
Audio Screen Control

Control the audio system through the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

### Interface Dial

1. Rotate or press to display the song list.
2. Rotate , move or to select a file from the list (files in MP3, WMA, or AAC). Press .
   - Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

#### Audio Menu P. 222

### On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select to skip to the next folder, and to skip to the beginning of the previous folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC.
2. Select or to change tracks (files in MP3, WMA, or AAC). Select and hold to move rapidly within a track/file.
   - Select More to display the menu item.

#### Audio Menu P. 222

- **Random**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.
- **Repeat**: Repeats the current track/file.
- **Scan**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC). Select Stop Scan to stop scanning and play the current selection.
Playing a Disc

Audio Menu

MENU button (in CD mode)

Interface Dial

Rotate \( \rightleftharpoons \) to select an item. Press \( \rightleftharpoons \).

The following items are available, depending on the type of disc:

- **Sound**: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound.
  
  Adjusting the Sound P. 193

- **Music Search**: Selects a file from the Music Search list.
  
  How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC) P. 224

- **Change Source**: Changes the audio source mode.

- **Scan**:
  
  Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

  Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

- **Random/Repeat**:

  Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

  Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

  Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

  Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks/files in random order.
• **Rec to HDD**: Records a music CD onto the HDD for playback using HDD Audio.
  
  E Recording a Music CD to HDD P. 228

---

**On Demand Multi-Use Display™**

1. Select **More**.
2. Select a setting item.

The following items are available, depending on the type of disc:

• **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  
  E Adjusting the Sound P. 193
• **Screen Settings**: Displays the screen preferences screen.
  
  E Changing the Screen Settings P. 89

---

*Continued*
Playing a Disc ➤ Audio Menu

How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)

Press the MENU button (in CD mode) ➤ Music Search

Rotate 璇○, move ◄ or ► to select a file from the Music Search list. Press ◁.
Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

Also includes:

CDs with MP3, WMA or AAC Files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Digital Surround and Neural Surround are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
Playing a Disc

Recommended CDs

■ Protecting CDs
Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:
• Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
• When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
• Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
• Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
• Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
• Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
• Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

NOTICE
Do not insert a damaged CD. It may get stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples:
Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs
- Bubbled/Wrinkled
- With Label/Sticker
- Using Printer Label Kit

Damaged CDs
- Sealed
- With Plastic Ring

Poor quality CDs
- Chipped/Cracked
- Warped
- Burrs

Small CDs
- 3 in (80 mm) CD
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio

The Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio function plays tracks from music CDs that have been recorded onto the built-in HDD. You can arrange the tracks in playlists or play the tracks using various search methods.

Selecting HDD Mode

1. Press the MENU button. (in AUDIO mode)
2. Rotate to select Change Source. Press .
3. Rotate to select HDD. Press to play tracks stored on the HDD.

- Title information is displayed if found in the Gracenote® Album Info (Gracenote® Media Database) stored on the HDD.
- The HDD has two types of playlists: original playlists and user playlists. An original playlist is automatically created for each album when a music CD is recorded. You can customize up to six user playlists provided on the HDD by adding tracks from your original playlists.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select Source.
2. Select the HDD icon to play tracks stored on the HDD.
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio

Recording a Music CD to HDD

When Recording from CD is set to Auto, the songs on music CDs are automatically recorded to the HDD the first time you play each disc. You can then play the songs directly from the HDD.

**Customized Features** P. 90

1. Press the **MENU** button. (in CD mode)
2. Rotate ⬇️ to select **Cancel Record to HDD**. Press 🎧.

**Recording a CD Manually**

When Recording from CD is set to Manual, the songs on music CDs can be manually recorded to the HDD.

1. Press the **MENU** button. (in CD mode)
2. Rotate ⬇️ to select **Rec to HDD**. Press 🎧.

**Clearing the HDD**

Any music tracks stored on the HDD can be deleted.

**Recording a Music CD to HDD**

You can add tracks to user playlists, where you can mix and match tracks from other CDs recorded on the HDD.

**Editing an Album or Playlist** P. 233

**Editing Track Information** P. 235

If you stop the engine or the power system is turned off while recording a CD, there may be pauses between songs when you play back from the HDD.

Repeat, random, and scan functions are not available during recording.

You can play music from other sources (e.g., SiriusXM®, HDD, etc.) while recording.

Please note that there is no compensation offered in the case of unsuccessful recording of audio data or the loss of audio data due to any cause whatsoever.
Audio Screen Control

Control the audio system through the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

### Interface Dial

1. Rotate or press to display the song list.
2. Rotate , move or to select a track from the list. Press.

   ➤ Press the button to display the menu items.

   ↳ Audio Menu P. 230

### On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select skip to the next playlist/album, and to skip to the beginning of the previous playlist/album.
2. Select or to change tracks.

   Select and hold to move rapidly within a track.

   ➤ Select More to display the menu item.

   ↳ Audio Menu P. 230

### Audio Screen Control

- **Repeat:**
  - Repeat Artist: Repeats all tracks in the current artist.
  - Repeat Album: Repeats all tracks in the current album.
  - Repeat Track: Repeats the current track.

- **Random:**
  - Random in Artist: Plays all tracks in the current artist in random order.
  - Random in Album: Plays all tracks in the current album in random order.
  - Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks in random order.

- **Scan:**
  - Albums: Provides 10-second sampling of the first track in each album.
  - Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on HDD.
Audio Menu

MENU button (in HDD mode)

Interface Dial

Rotate ⏤ to select an item. Press ⏤.

The following items are available:

- **Sound**: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker’s sound.
  
  [Adjusting the Sound](P. 193)

- **Music Search**: Selects a file from the Music Search list.
  
  [How to Select a Track from the Music Search List](P. 232)

- **Change Source**: Changes the audio source mode.

- **Scan**:
  
  - **Scan Albums**: Provides 10-second sampling of the first track in each album.
  
  - **Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on HDD.

- **Random/Repeat**: The following menu items vary depending on the category you selected by the Music Search list.
  
  - **Repeat Artist**: Repeats all tracks in the current artist.
  
  - **Repeat Album**: Repeats all tracks in the current album.
  
  - **Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track.
  
  - **Random in Artist**: Plays all tracks in the current artist in random order.
  
  - **Random in Album**: Plays all tracks in the current album in random order.
  
  - **Random All Tracks**: Plays all tracks in random order.
• **Edit/Delete**: Change the playlist name, album name, genre, and track order of the current playlist. You can also delete tracks, playlists, and albums.

### On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select **More**.
2. Select a setting item.

The following items are available:

- **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  
  ![Adjusting the Sound](P. 193)

- **Screen Settings**: Displays the screen preferences screen.
  
  ![Changing the Screen Settings](P. 89)
How to Select a Track from the Music Search List

**METHOD**

**MENU** button (in HDD mode)  ➤  **Music Search**

1. Move ‹ or › to select a search category. Press ◄.

2. Rotate ◄ to select a track from the Music Search list. Press ◄.
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio

Audio Menu

MENU button (in HDD mode) ➤ Edit/Delete

1. Rotate ∈ to select Albums or Playlist. Press ↵.
2. Rotate ∈ to select an album or playlist that you want edit or delete. Press ↵.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate ∈ to select an item. Press ↵.

The following items are available:
- Edit Name: Enter a new name using the interface dial or the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
- Delete: Deletes the selected album or playlist.
- List Tracks: Change the track title, artist name, genre, and composer. You can also delete tracks.

Continued
Creating a New Playlist

MENU button (in HDD mode) ➤ Edit/Delete ➤ Playlists ➤ Create New Playlist

1. Enter the playlist name using the interface dial or the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
2. Select tracks from the music search list.
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio

Audio Menu

Continued

■ Editing Track Information

MENU button (in HDD mode) ► Edit/Delete ► Tracks

Change the track title, artist name, genre, and composer. You can also delete tracks.

Rotate select a track you want to edit or delete. Press .

The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

The following items are available:

- **Edit Name**: Enter the track information (track name, track artist, etc.) using the interface dial or the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
- **Delete**: Deletes a track.

Continued
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio

Audio Menu

Displaying Music Information

MENU button (in HDD mode) ➤ Edit/Delete

Music information (album name, artist name, genre) can be acquired by accessing the Gracenote® Album Info.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select Albums. Press 📡.
2. Rotate 🔄 to select an album that you want edit or delete. Press 📡. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate 🔄 to select Edit Name. Press 📡.
4. Move 🔄 to select Get Music Info. Press 📡. The system starts to access the Gracenote® Album Info.
Updating Gracenote® Album Info

1. Insert the update disc into the disc slot or connect the USB flash drive that includes the update.
2. Rotate to select Update Gracenote Album Info. Press .
3. Rotate to select Update by CD or Update by USB. Press .

The system starts updating and the confirmation message appears on the screen. Press to finish.

To acquire updated files:
- Consult a dealer.

Once you perform an update, any information you edited before will be overwritten or erased.
Playing Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio

Audio Menu

Deleting All HDD Data

- SETTINGS button ▶ Audio Settings ▶ CD/HDD ▶ Delete All HDD Data

Delete all music data on the HDD.

Rotate ✂️ to select Yes. Press 🎧.
Playing an iPod

1. Open the USB cover.
2. Install the iPod USB connector to the USB port.

Connecting an iPod

- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disc drive, as the device or your tracks may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

Your audio system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

If the audio system does not recognize your iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

Model Compatibility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iPod (5th generation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod touch (1st to 6th generation) released between 2007 and 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Playing an iPod

Selecting iPod Mode

1. Connect the iPod to the USB port in the console compartment.
2. Press the MENU button. (in AUDIO mode)
4. Rotate , select iPod. Press .

1. Connect the iPod to the USB port in the console compartment.
2. Select Source.
3. Select the iPod icon.

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle’s audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

You can control an iPod using voice commands.

- iPod Commands P. 417
- Song By Voice™ (SBV) P. 246

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 394
Audio Screen Control

Control the audio system through the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

1. Rotate or press to display the song list.
2. Rotate or move or press to select a song from the list. Press .

Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

Some functions may not be available depending on your phone’s model or software version.

Audio Menu P. 243

Continued
Playing an iPod

Audio Screen Control

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

The following items are available:

- **Play/Pause**: Plays or pauses a song file.
- **Previous/Next**: Select the previous or next track. Select and hold to move rapidly within a track.
- **Album Bar**: Select to display the album search screen. Select the album bar to search for an album.
- **Repeat**: Repeats the current track.
- **Shuffle**:
  - **Shuffle Albums**: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.
  - **Shuffle All Songs**: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.
- **More**: Select to display the menu item.

Audio Menu P. 243
Audio Menu

MENU button (in iPod mode)

Interface Dial

Rotate to select an item. Press .

The following items are available:

• **Sound**: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker’s sound.
  
  \[ \text{Adjusting the Sound P. 193} \]

• **Music Search**: Selects a song from the Music Search list.
  
  \[ \text{How to Select a Song from the Music Search List P. 245} \]

• **Change Source**: Changes the audio source mode.

• **Play/Pause**: Pauses or plays a song file.

• **Shuffle/Repeat**:
  
  \[ \text{Repeat Song: Repeats the current track.} \]

  \[ \text{Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.} \]

  \[ \text{Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.} \]
Playing an iPod

Audio Menu

1. Select More.
2. Select a setting item.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

The following items are available:
- **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  - Adjusting the Sound P. 193
- **Screen Settings**: Displays the screen preferences screen.
  - Changing the Screen Settings P. 89
How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

1. Rotate to select a search category. Press .

2. Rotate to select a file from the Music Search list. Press .
Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Use SBV to search for and play music from your HDD or iPod using voice commands.

Settings Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Settings Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Rotate ⌜ to select On or Off. Press ⌜.

The following items are available:
- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.
Playing an iPod ➔ Song By Voice™ (SBV)

1. Set the Song By Voice setting to On.
2. Press the (Talk) button and say "Music Search" to activate the SBV feature for the HDD and iPod.
3. Say a command.
   - Example 1: Say "(List) ‘Artist A’" to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
   - Example 2: Say "Play ‘Artist A’" to start playing songs by that artist.
4. To cancel SBV, press the (Hang-Up/Back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Searching for Music Using Song By Voice™ (SBV)

1. Press the (Talk) button again to speak Voice Portal
   - Phone Call
   - Navigation
   - Music Search
   - Audio
   - Voice Help
   - Climate Control
   To see a list of voice commands, say Voice Help
   You can also say: What time is it?

Search your music selection in HDD
You can say:
   - Play Others
   - List Others

NOTE:
Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the HDD or iPod.
You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers.
SBV may not be able to recognize languages other than English for the artist name, song title, album title, and composers.
Once you have canceled this mode, you need to press the (Talk) button and say "Music Search" again to re-activate this mode.

Continued
Playing an iPod | Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the HDD or iPod.

1. Move ▼ and rotate ▼ to select New Modification. Press ◼.

2. Rotate ◼ to select HDD or iPod. Press ◼.

Phonetic Modification

Phonetic Modification is grayed out when Song By Voice is set to Off.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.
3. Rotate ⌒ to select the item to modify (e.g., Artist). Press ⌒. The list of the selected item appears on the screen.

4. Rotate ⌒ to select an entry (e.g., No Name). Press ⌒. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

5. Rotate ⌒ to select Modify. Press ⌒. To listen to the current phonetic modification, rotate ⌒ to select Play. Press ⌒. To delete the current phonetic modification, rotate ⌒ to select Delete. Press ⌒.
Playing an iPod Song By Voice™ (SBV)

6. Enter the phonetic spelling you wish to use (e.g., “Artist A”) when prompted.

7. Rotate \( \text{ } \) to select OK to exit. The artist “No Name” is phonetically modified to “Artist A.” When in the SBV mode, you can press the \( \text{ } \) (Talk) button and use the voice command “Play ‘Artist A’” to play songs by the artist “No Name.”
Selecting Internet Radio Mode

**Interface Dial**
1. Connect a compatible phone through Bluetooth®.
2. Press the MENU button. (in AUDIO mode)
3. Rotate 🎧 to select Change Source. Press 🎧.
4. Rotate 🎧 to select Pandora® or Aha. Press 🎧.

**On Demand Multi-Use Display™**
1. Connect a compatible phone through Bluetooth®.
2. Select Source.
3. Select the Pandora® or Aha icon.

**iPhone**
You can also connect the phone using your USB connector to the USB port.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, call 1-888-528-7876 or visit acura.com/handsfreelink (U.S.) or handsfreelink.ca (Canada).

* Not available on all models
Playing Internet Radio

Pandora® Menu*

The following items are available:

- **Create Station**: Create a new station from genre, current track, or artist.
- **Skip Forward**: Skip the current song.
- **Play/Pause**: Pauses or plays a song.
- **Station List**: Displays the list of all your stored stations. Select a station from the list to play.
- **Like**: Likes the current song. Pandora® will play songs similar to the one liked.
- **Dislike**: Dislikes the current song and skips to the next song. Pandora® will avoid playing songs similar to the one disliked.
- **Bookmark Track**: Bookmarks the current song.
- **Bookmark Artist**: Bookmarks the current artist.

Rotate ☐ to select an item. Press ☐.

Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission.

Pandora® is a personalized Internet radio service that selects music based on an artist, song, or genre a user enters, and streams what is likely to be of interest.

You can control Pandora® using voice commands.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit www.pandora.com for more information.

Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

* Not available on all models
Playing Internet Radio

Pandora® Menu*

1. Select ▼ or ▲ to change a station.
2. Select ► to skip a song.
   - Select ▶/■ to pause or play a song.
   - Select ◄ or → to evaluate a song.
   - Select More to display the menu item.

- Adjusting the Sound P. 193
- Changing the Screen Settings P. 89

There are restrictions on the number of songs you can skip or dislike in a given hour.

* Not available on all models
Aha™ Radio Menu

Rotate \( \pm \) to select an item. Press \( \bullet \).

Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™
Select \( \downarrow \downarrow \) or \( \downarrow \uparrow \) to skip contents.
- Select \( \downarrow / \uparrow \) to pause or play a song.
- Select an icon to evaluate a song.
- Select More to display the menu item.

Adjusting the Sound P. 193
Changing the Screen Settings P. 89

Aha™ Radio
Aha™ by Harman is a cloud-based service that organizes your favorite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

You can control Aha™ Radio using voice commands.

Aha Commands P. 417

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle’s audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

Aha™ Radio P. 398

The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

To use this service in your vehicle, the AcuraLink® app must be installed on your phone. Visit owners.acura.com/apps (U.S.) or www.myacura.ca/apps (Canada).

You must have a previously set up Aha™ account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit www.aharadio.com for more information.

On Canadian models, Aha™ is referred to as Streams. Visit acura.ca/owners/acuralink/streams for more information.
How to Select a Station from the Station List

MENU button (in Aha™ mode) ➤ Station List

Rotate ‹› to select a station from the Station list. Press ‹›.
Playing a USB Flash Drive

Connecting a USB Flash Drive

1. Open the USB cover.
2. Install the USB flash drive to the USB port.

USB Flash Drives

A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended. Some digital audio players may not be compatible. Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work. Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display. Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

Connecting a USB Flash Drive

- We recommend connecting the USB flash drive with the USB adapter cable.
- Do not connect your USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disc drive, as the device or your tracks may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.

USB Flash Drives

Digital music tracks, such as MP3, WMA, AAC, etc., in USB flash drives cannot be copied to HDD. Likewise, digital music tracks recorded to HDD cannot be copied to USB flash drives.

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.
Selecting USB Mode

**Interface Dial**
1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port in the console compartment.
2. Press the MENU button. (in AUDIO mode)
3. Rotate  to select Change Source. Press .
4. Rotate  to select USB. Press .

**On Demand Multi-Use Display™**
1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port in the console compartment.
2. Select Source.
3. Select the USB icon.

---

Selecting USB Mode

You can control a USB flash drive using voice commands.

**USB Commands** P. 417

Files in WMA/ACC format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays Unplayable File, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 394
Audio Screen Control

Control the audio system through the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

### Interface Dial
1. Rotate ◀ or press ⬆ to display the song list.
2. Rotate ◀ or move ◀ or ➤ to select a song from the list. Press ◆.
   - Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

### On Demand Multi-Use Display™
1. Select ◀ to skip to the next folder, and ➤ to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.
2. Select ◀ or ➤ to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.
   - Select More to display the menu item.

---

**Random**:
- Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.
- Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

**Repeat**:
- Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.
- Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

**Scan**:
- Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.
- Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.
Playing a USB Flash Drive

Audio Menu

MENU button (in USB mode)

Interface Dial

Rotate \( \circ \) to select an item. Press \( \circ \).

The following items are available:

- **Sound**: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound.
  
  - Adjusting the Sound P. 193

- **Music Search**: Selects a file from the Music Search list.

  - How to Select a File from the Music Search List P. 261

- **Change Source**: Changes the audio source mode.

- **Scan**:
  
  - Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.
  
  - Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

- **Random/Repeat**:
  
  - Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.
  
  - Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.
  
  - Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.
  
  - Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.
Playing a USB Flash Drive

Audio Menu

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select More.
2. Select a setting item.

The following items are available:

- **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  - Adjusting the Sound P. 193
- **Screen Settings**: Displays the screen preferences screen.
  - Changing the Screen Settings P. 89
How to Select a File from the Music Search List

MENU button (in USB mode) ➤ Music Search

1. Move ◀ or ▶ to select a search category. Press .

2. Rotate ◀ to select a file from the Music Search list. Press .
Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your Bluetooth-compatible phone. This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Selecting Bluetooth® Audio Mode

1. Make sure that your phone is on, paired, and linked to HFL. 
   - Pairing a Phone P. 269
2. Press the MENU button. (in AUDIO mode)
3. Rotate to select Change Source. Press .

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Make sure that your phone is on, paired, and linked to HFL.
   - Pairing a Phone P. 269
2. Select Source.
3. Select the Bluetooth icon.

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones, call 1-888-528-7876 or visit www.acura.com/handsfreelink (U.S.) or www.handsfreelink.ca (Canada).

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

You can control Bluetooth® Audio using voice commands.

Bluetooth® Audio Commands P. 417
Audio Screen Control

Control the audio system through the audio/information screen and On Demand Multi-Use Display™.

1. Press the MENU button. (in BT mode).
2. Rotate to select an item. Press to.

The following items are available:
- **Sound**: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker’s sound. 
  [Adjusting the Sound P. 193]
- **Music Search**: Selects a song from the Music Search list.
- **Change Source**: Changes the audio source mode.
- **Play**: Plays a song.
- **Pause**: Pauses a song.

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker’s operating instructions.

The pause function and Music Search may not be available on some phones.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone. This function may not be available on some phones.
Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Audio Screen Control

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select ▼ or ▶ to change folders.
2. Select ◄ or ► to change files.
   ▶ Select More to display the menu items, then select a setting item.
   ▶ Select ▶ or ▶ to play or pause a song file.

The following items are available:
- **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  
  Adjusting the Sound P. 193
- **Screen Settings**: Displays the screen preferences screen.
  
  Changing the Screen Settings P. 89
This section describes how to operate Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®. You can place and receive phone calls using your vehicle’s audio system without handling your cell phone.

**Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®**

- Using HFL ............................................. 266
- Pairing a Phone .................................... 269
- Importing Phonebook Data ................... 275
- Setting Up Speed Dialing ..................... 276
- Phonebook Phonetic Modification .......... 282
- Phone Settings ..................................... 287
- Making a Call ..................................... 292
- Receiving a Call ................................... 298
- Options During a Call ............................. 299

**Text/E-mail Message** ................................ 300
- Setting a Text/E-mail Message .......... 300
- Selecting a Mail Account ..................... 301
- Receiving a Text/E-mail Message ...... 302
- Displaying Messages ......................... 303

**Roadside Assistance** ........................... 307

**HFL Menus** ......................................... 308
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Using HFL

**HFL Buttons**

- **(Pick-Up) button**: Press to go to the Speed Dial/Call History on the multi-information display or to answer an incoming call.
- **(Hang-Up/Back) button**: Press to end a call, or to cancel a command.
- **(Talk) button**: Press to give HFL voice commands.
- **PHONE button**: Press to go directly to the Phone screen.

Interface dial: Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press . Move <, >, or to select secondary menu.

**Voice control tips:**
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the (Talk) button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system’s volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

If you press (Talk) button, the climate control fan speed is reduced automatically. When voice recognition ends, the fan speed returns to the previous level.

To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities: Call 1-888-528-7876 or visit www.acura.com/handsfreelink (U.S.) or www.handsfreelink.ca (Canada).
The audio/information screen notifies you when you have an incoming call.

- **Bluetooth® Indicator**: Comes on when your phone is connected to HFL.
- **Battery Level Status**
- **Roam Status**
- **Signal Strength**
- **Caller’s Name**
- **Caller’s Number**

**Bluetooth® Wireless Technology**

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

**HFL Limitations**

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

*Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle’s navigation system, without handling your mobile phone.*
**Limitations for Manual Operation**

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion.

**U.S. models**
You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

**Setting Up Speed Dialing** P. 276

---

**HFL Status Display**

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language to English, French, or Spanish.

**Language Settings** P. 36
Pairing a Phone

When no Bluetooth-compatible phone is paired, the following screen appears:

1. Rotate ⚪ to select Yes. Press 🟢.
2. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode. Press 🟢.
   ➤ HFL automatically searches for a Bluetooth® device.
3. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing 🟢.
   ➤ If your phone does not appear, you can select Refresh to search again.
   ➤ If your phone still does not appear, move ⚪ to select Device Not Found? and search for Bluetooth® devices using your phone. From your phone, select HandsFreeLink.

Your Bluetooth-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
• You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
• Up to six phones can be paired.
• Your phone’s battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFL.
• If your phone is not ready for pairing or is not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:
• Phone can be used with HFL
• Phone is compatible with Bluetooth® Audio.

Continued
4. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen. Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.

5. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

When pairing is completed, an Automatic Phone Sync prompt appears. Select On if you want your call history and phonebook automatically imported to HFL.

Some phones may have an additional setting to allow the phone to auto connect each time you turn on your vehicle.
3. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing ✒. 
   - If your phone does not appear, you can select Refresh to search again. 
   - If your phone still does not appear, move ☰ to select Device Not Found? and search for Bluetooth® devices using your phone. From your phone, select HandsFreeLink.
4. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen. 
   - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
5. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

Continued
Pairing a Phone

## Changing the Pairing Code

**SETTINGS** button ➙ **System Settings** ➙ **Edit Pairing Code**

Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Random**. Press 😶.

### Changing the Pairing Code

The pairing code may be six or four digits depending on your phone.

The default pairing code is 0000 until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.
Changing the Currently Paired Phone

**SETTINGS button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Bluetooth Device List**

1. Rotate 🔄 to select a paired phone you want to replace. Press 🔔.
2. Rotate 🔄 to select Replace This Device. Press 🔔.
3. HFL enters the pairing process and searches a new phone. ➔ Follow the prompts to pair a new phone.
4. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

Changing the Currently Paired Phone

The replaced phone will keep the same speed dial entries, and security PIN information from the previously paired phone.
Deleting a Paired Phone

 SETTINGS button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Bluetooth Device List

1. Rotate ⬇️ to select a paired phone you want to replace. Press ⏯️.
2. Rotate ⬇️ to select Delete This Device. Press ⏯️.
3. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate ⬇️ to select Yes. Press ⏯️.
4. You will receive a notification on the screen if deletion is successful.
Importing Phonebook Data

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

- Pref
- Home
- Mobile
- Work
- Pager
- Fax
- Car
- Other
- Message
- Voice

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.
Setting Up Speed Dialing

MENU button (on Phone screen) ► Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

1. Rotate 🔄 to select New Entry. Press 📲.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select a number entry method. Press 📲.

The following options are available:
• Import from Call History: Select a number from the call history.
• Manual Input: Input the number manually.
• Import from Phonebook: Select a number from the linked mobile phone’s imported phonebook.

When a voice tag is stored, press the [📞] (Talk) button to call the number using the voice tag. Say “Call” and the voice tag name.

Voice tags allow you to call speed dial entries from the Voice Portal screen or Phone call screen by saying the voice tag name.
 Registering a Voice Tag to a Speed Dial Entry

1. Select an existing speed dial entry.
2. From the pop-up menu, rotate 🔄 to select Edit. Press 🆙.
4. From the pop-up menu, rotate 🔄 to select Record. Press 🆙.
5. Press 🆙.
   ▶ Using the 🆘 (Talk) button, follow the prompt to enter a voice tag.

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.

Avoid using “home” as a voice tag.

It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use “John Smith” instead of “John.”
Setting Up Speed Dialing

**To delete a voice tag**

1. Select an existing speed dial entry.
2. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select Edit. Press .
4. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select Clear. Press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select Yes. Press .

**To delete a speed dial**

1. Select an existing speed dial entry.
2. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select Delete. Press .
3. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select Yes. Press .
Setting Up Speed Dialing

You can preset five previously stored speed dial entries, and make a call from one of the preset numbers, or call history when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle’s Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

To preset a speed dial

1. Select Shortcuts.
2. Select Phone.
3. Select Speed Dial.
4. Select Edit or No Entry.
   - If you select No Entry, go to step 6.
5. Select Add and select a preset number you want to store as a shortcut.
   - Five presets appear. Select a No Entry preset or an existing preset.
   - The screen changes to a list of previously stored speed dial entries.

Setting Phone Shortcuts

You can make a call using the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to input numbers.

Dial icon

You can make a call using the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to input numbers.
Setting Up Speed Dialing

6. Select a phone number you want to store as a shortcut. Select OK and press ☎.

To make a call from a speed dial entry

1. Select Shortcuts.
2. Select Phone.
3. Select Speed Dial.
4. Select a preset number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.
Setting Up Speed Dialing

To delete a speed dial

1. Select Shortcuts.
2. Select Phone.
3. Select Speed Dial.
4. Select Edit.
5. Select Delete.
6. Select the preset number with the phone number you want to delete.

To make a call from call history

1. Select Shortcuts.
2. Select Phone.
3. Select Call History.
4. Select a phone number.
   - Dialing starts automatically.

The call history displays the last six dialed, received, or missed calls.
Phonebook Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone’s contact name so that it is easier for HFL to recognize voice commands.

To add a new voice tag

1. Rotate to select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to. Press .

3. Move < or > and Rotate ◁ to select a contact name. Press ◁. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

4. Rotate ◁ to select Modify. Press ◁.

5. Using the [ ] (Talk) button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

6. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate ◁ to select OK. Press ◁.

7. The screen returns to the New Voice Tag screen. Move ◁ and rotate ◁ to select OK. Press ◁.
To modify a voice tag

1. Rotate to select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to. Press .
2. Rotate to select a contact name you want to modify. Press.
   The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate to select Modify. Press .
4. Using the (Talk) button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select OK. Press .

Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.
To delete a modified voice tag

1. Rotate to select the phone for which you want to delete phonetic modification. Press 🛑.

2. Rotate to select a contact name you want to delete. Press 🛑.
   - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

3. Rotate to select Delete, then press 🛑.
   - Items to be deleted are indicated with a trash icon.

4. Move 📈 and Rotate 🛑 to select OK. Press 🛑.

Continued
To delete all modified voice tags

1. Rotate 🔄 to select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification. Press 🔄.
   - The contact name list appears.

2. Move 🔄 and Rotate 🔄 to select Delete All. Press 🔄.

3. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate 🔄 to select OK. Press 🔄.
Phone Settings

Set HFL options and features.

- Editing a Security PIN

1. Rotate to select the phone you want to add a security PIN to. Press.
2. Rotate to select Edit PIN. Press.
3. Enter a new four-digit number. Rotate to select OK to enter the security PIN. Move to delete.
4. Re-enter the four-digit number. The screen returns to the screen in step 4.

■ Editing a Security PIN

If the phone is already security PIN protected, you need to enter the current security PIN before clearing the PIN or creating a new one.

You can use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to input numbers. Select numbers, then OK.
**Editing User Name**

** SETTINGS button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Bluetooth Device List**

Edit the user name of a paired phone as follows:

1. Rotate to select a phone you want to edit. Press .
2. Rotate to select **Edit Device Name**. Press .
3. Enter a new name of the phone. 
   - Rotate or move to select **OK** to enter the name. Press .
   - Move to delete.

---

**Editing User Name**

You can use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to input letters and numbers.
### Automatic Transferring

**SETTINGS** button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Auto Transfer

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.

Rotate ⬇️ to select **On**. Press ✦.

### Auto Answer

**SETTINGS** button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Auto Answer

You can set HFL to automatically answer an incoming call in four seconds.

Rotate ⬇️ to select **On**. Press ✦.

Continued
Ring Tone

(Settings button) Phone Settings Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

Rotate to select your desired setting item. Press .

The following items are available:

- **Fixed**: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.
- **Mobile Phone**: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.
- **Off**: No ring tones sound from the speaker.
### Automatic Phone Sync Setting

**SETTINGS button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Automatic Phone Sync**

> Automatic phone sync

- **Automatic Phone Synchronization**
  - On: Phone information will be imported.
  - Off: Phone information will not be imported.

Rotate to select **On** or **Off**. Press .

---

### Use Contact Photo

**SETTINGS button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Use Contact Photo**

You can display a caller's picture on an incoming call screen.

Rotate to select **On**. Press .

---

**Automatic Phone Sync Setting**

Select **On** if you want your call history and phonebook automatically imported to HFL. If prompted by your phone, please accept the import request. Not all phones require this additional step.
Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from most screens. Press the \( \text{S} \) (Talk) button and say “Call” and the voice tag name, “Call by name” and the phonebook name, or “Call” and the phone number.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 30 ft (10 m).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.
Continued

Making a Call

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

1. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Move to Search. You can use the keyboard on the touchscreen for an alphabetical search.

2. Rotate to select a number. Press . Dialing starts automatically.

Using the Phonebook

MENU button (on Phone screen) ➤ Phonebook

Using the Phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

- Limitations for Manual Operation P. 268
- Setting Up Speed Dialing P. 276

You can use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ for an alphabetical search.

Continued
Making a Call

### Entering a Phone Number

**MENU button (on Phone screen) ➤ Dial**

1. Rotate 🔄 to select a number. Press 🔄.
2. Rotate 🔄 to select ☑. Press 🔄.

#### Entering a Phone Number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 268
- **Setting Up Speed Dialing** P. 276

You can use the keyboard on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™ to input numbers. Select numbers, then ☑ to start dialing.
Making a Call

Continued

Using Redial

MENU button (on Phone screen) ➤ Redial

You can display a caller's picture on an incoming call screen.

![Phone menu](image)

- Speed Dial
- Redial
- Phonebook
- Call History
- Dial
- Roadside Assistance
- Text/Email

Rotate 🔄 to select Dial. Press 🎤. ➤ Dialing starts automatically.
Making a Call

Using Call History

MENU button (on Phone screen) ➤ Call History

Call history is stored by All, Dialed, Received, and Missed.

Audio/Information Screen

1. Move < or > to select All, Dialed, Received, and Missed.
2. Rotate ○ to select a number.
   ➤ Dialing starts automatically.

Multi-information Display

1. Press the button.
2. Move the left selector wheel right to select Call History.
3. Roll the left selector wheel to select a number.
4. Push the left selector wheel or the button.
   ➤ Dialing starts automatically.

Using Call History

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Apppears only when a phone is connected to HFL.)

These icons next to the number indicate the following:
• #: Dialed calls
• #: Received calls
• #: Missed calls

Multi-information Display
The call history displays the last 12 dialed, received, or missed calls.
Making a Call

Using Speed Dial

- Press the \( \text{MENU} \) button (on Phone screen) ➤ \textit{Speed Dial}

**Audio/Information Screen**
- Rotate \( \bigtriangledown \) to select a number. Press \( \text{Smile} \).
- Dialing starts automatically.

**Multi-information Display**

1. Press the \( \bigcirc \) button.
2. Move the left selector wheel left to select \textit{Speed Dial}.
3. Roll the left selector wheel to select a number.
4. Push the left selector wheel or the \( \text{Smile} \) button.
   - Dialing starts automatically.

Using Speed Dial

- Move \( \bigtriangledown \) to select \textit{More Speed Dials} to view another paired phone’s speed dial list. You can make a call from that list using the currently connected phone.

- When a voice tag is stored, press the \( \text{x} \) (Talk) button to call the number using the voice tag.

- **Setting Up Speed Dialing** P. 276

- Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name or number can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the \( \text{x} \) (Talk) button and follow the prompts.

**Multi-information Display**

The speed dial displays the 20 speed dial entries.
Receiving a Call

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the Incoming call screen appears.

1. Press the \( \text{Pick-Up} \) button to answer the call.
2. Press the \( \text{Hang-Up/Back} \) button to decline or end the call.

Call Waiting

Press the \( \text{Pick-Up} \) button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the \( \text{Pick-Up} \) button again to return to the current call.
Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the \( \text{Hang-Up/Back} \) button if you want to hang up the current call.
You can select the icons on the On Demand Multi-Use Display\textsuperscript{TM} instead of the \( \text{Pick-Up} \) and \( \text{Hang-Up/Back} \) buttons.
Options During a Call

The available options are shown on the Phone screen.

Rotate ☰ to select the option. Press ☸.

The mute icon appears when Mute is selected. Select Mute again to turn it off.

The following options are available during a call:

- **Mute**: Mute your voice.
- **Transfer**: Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.
- **Touch Tones**: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

Options During a Call

- **Touch Tones**: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
Setting a Text/E-mail Message

To Turn On or Off the Text/E-mail Function

Settings button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Enable Text/Email

Rotate ☻ to select On or Off. Press ☻.

To Turn On or Off the Text/E-mail Notice

Settings button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ New Text/Email Alert

Rotate ☻ to select On or Off. Press ☻.

The following items are available:

- On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new text message.
- Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.
Selecting a Mail Account

** SETTINGS button ➤ Phone Settings ➤ Select Account

If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.

Rotate 📲 to Text Messages or an e-mail account you want. Press 📲.

You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.
Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

HFL can display newly received text and e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked mobile phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text or e-mail message.
2. Rotate 🔄 to select Read to listen to the message. Press 🎧.
   - The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out. Press 🎧.

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text/e-mail message feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the New Text/Email Alert setting to On.

To Turn On or Off the Text/E-mail Notice

P. 300
Displaying Messages

Displaying Text Messages

1. Select account if necessary.
2. Rotate to select a message. Press .
   The text message is displayed.
   The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

   The icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, move << or >> on the text message screen.

Some phones may have an additional setting to enable this feature.
Displaying E-mail Messages

MENU button (on Phone screen) ➔ Text/Email

1. Rotate 🔄 to select a folder. Press 🎭.

2. Rotate 🔄 to select a message. Press 🎭.
   ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

Displaying E-mail Messages

Received text and e-mail messages may appear in the message list screen at the same time. In this case, text messages are titled No subject.
Read or Stop Reading a Message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
   - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
   - Displaying Messages P. 303
2. Press \( \text{ \text{Stop}} \) to stop reading.
   Press \( \text{ \text{Stop}} \) again to start reading the message from the beginning.

Reply to a Message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
   - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
   - Displaying Messages P. 303
2. Move \( \text{ \text{Up}} \) and Rotate \( \text{ \text{Right}} \) to select Reply. Press \( \text{ \text{Reply}} \).

Continued
1. Go to the text message screen. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

**Displaying Text Messages**
P. 303

2. Move \( \text{\#} \) and Rotate \( \text{\#} \) to select Call. Press \( \text{\#} \).

3. Rotate \( \text{\#} \) to select the reply message. Press \( \text{\#} \).
   - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

4. Select Send to send the message. **Message Sent** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

**Calling the Sender**

1. Go to the text message screen. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

**Reply to a Message**

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- Talk to you later, I’m driving.
- I’m on my way.
- I’m running late.
- OK
- Yes
- No

**Calling the Sender**

1. Go to the text message screen. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

2. Move \( \text{\#} \) and Rotate \( \text{\#} \) to select Call. Press \( \text{\#} \).

3. Rotate \( \text{\#} \) to select the reply message. Press \( \text{\#} \).
   - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

4. Select Send to send the message. **Message Sent** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

**Reply to a Message**

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- Talk to you later, I’m driving.
- I’m on my way.
- I’m running late.
- OK
- Yes
- No

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones:
- U.S.: Visit www.acura.com/handsfreelink, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit www.handsfreelink.ca, or call 1-888-528-7876.
Roadside Assistance

MENU button (on Phone screen) ➤ Roadside Assistance

Provides a nationwide service for unexpected incidents. You can call for assistance using a phone paired and connected to Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®.

Rotate 🔄 to select a phone number. Press 🔄.
➤ Dialing starts automatically.

Roadside Assistance

If you are subscribed to a paid AcuraLink® package, you can call the roadside assistance using the LINK button instead of your phone.

AcuraLink® P. 314

This function is not available on all models.
To use HFL, you must first pair your Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.

**Phone settings screen**

1. Press the SETTINGS button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press 📞.
Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
Edit a previously stored speed dial number.
Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
Delete all the previously stored speed dial numbers.
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.
Set whether to automatically answer an incoming call after about four seconds.
Select the ring tone.
Set phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.
Display a caller's picture on an incoming call screen.
Turn the text/e-mail message function on and off.
Select a text or e-mail message account.
Select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.
Cancel/Reset all customized items in the Phone Settings group as default.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
HFL Menus

Phone screen

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Press the MENU button to display the menu items.

- **Dial**
  - Enter a phone number to dial.

- **Phonebook**
  - Display the paired phone’s phonebook.

- **Speed Dial**
  - Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.

- **Manual Input**
  - Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

- **New Entry**
  - Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

- **Import from Call History**
  - Import from Phonebook
  - Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

- **More Speed Dials**
  - Display another paired phone’s speed dial list.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
**HFL Menus**

- **Redial**: Redial the last number dialed in the phone's history.
  - **All**: Display the last 20 outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **Dialled**: Display the last 20 outgoing calls.
  - **Received**: Display the last 20 incoming calls.
  - **Missed**: Display the last 20 missed calls.

- **Call History**: Display the last 20 outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **All**: Display the last 20 outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
  - **Dialled**: Display the last 20 outgoing calls.
  - **Received**: Display the last 20 incoming calls.
  - **Missed**: Display the last 20 missed calls.

- **Roadside Assistance**: Makes a call to the number for the Roadside Assistance service.
  - **(Read/Stop)**: System reads received message aloud, or stop message from being read.
  - **Previous**: See the previous message.
  - **Next**: See the next message.
  - **Reply**: Reply to a received message using one of six fixed phrases.
  - **Call**: Make a call to the sender.

- **Text/Email**: Select a message, or select a file and then a message.
  - **Message is read aloud**: After that, press.
  - **Select Account**: Select a mail or text message account.

---

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.
*2: Not available on all models
*3: This function is not available if your phone is not supported.
AcuraLink® Messages

This section describes how Acura directly communicates important information to you regarding your vehicle.

AcuraLink® ............................................. 314
In Case of Emergency ......................... 314
Security Features ............................... 317
Operator Assistance ............................ 318
AcuraLink® Message ......................... 319
AcuraLink® Subscription Status .......... 324
AcuraLink®

A subscription-based service that provides convenient features such as voice communication in case of emergency, online security, one-on-one operator assistance, and the transmission of important messages regarding your vehicle’s status.

**Canadian models**

For information on traffic rerouting and traffic information updates, provided by the AcuraLink® server.

**In Case of Emergency**

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

You cannot use emergency services when:
- You travel outside the AcuraLink® service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the ASSIST button, microphone, speakers, or the unit itself.
- You are not subscribed to the service or your subscription is no longer valid.

AcuraLink® also provides services you can operate from the Internet or your smartphone.

To subscribe to AcuraLink®, or to get more information about all of its features, contact an Acura dealer or visit owners.acura.com (U.S.) or www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink (Canada).

**In Case of Emergency**

You cannot operate other navigation or phone related functions using the screens while talking to the operator.

Only the operator can terminate the connection to your vehicle.
Automatic Collision Notification

If your vehicle’s airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle will automatically attempt to connect to the AcuraLink® operator. Once connected, information about your vehicle, its positioning, and its condition will be sent to the operator; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

Automatic Collision Notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.
AcuraLink® In Case of Emergency

**Manual Operator Connection**

If you need to talk to the AcuraLink® operator in an emergency situation, you can manually connect to them by pressing the ASSIST button with the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON.

1. Open the cover attached to the ceiling console.
2. Press the ASSIST button.
   - You are connected to the AcuraLink® operator.

**Manual Operator Connection**

Do not press the button while driving. When you need to contact the operator, park the vehicle in a safe place.

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it automatically cancels the action after three minutes.

In an emergency, the cover can be broken through to press the ASSIST button.
Security Features

Your subscribed telematics service provider can track your vehicle’s location, remotely lock or unlock doors, and help you find your vehicle. To use these features, you need your user ID and personal identification number (PIN).

■ Stolen vehicle tracking
This feature searches and tracks down your vehicle position even if it is on the move. If you believe that your vehicle has been stolen, contact the police as well as the provider.

■ Remote door lock/unlock
The provider can remotely lock or unlock doors upon your request.

■ Vehicle finder
This feature is convenient to use when trying to locate your vehicle in large areas, such as a crowded parking lot. If you cannot locate your vehicle after using the remote transmitter’s answerback function, you can contact the provider which can then flash your vehicle’s exterior lights and sound the horn.

■ Security alarm notification
If the security system in your vehicle detects an abnormal condition, such as someone tampering with the lock on your vehicle, the provider notifies you by your preferred method.

The contact information of your provider, your user ID and PIN will be given when you subscribe to AcuraLink®. If you forget any of the above, contact a dealer or visit owners.acura.com (U.S.) or www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink (Canada).

You can also activate the remote door lock/unlock and vehicle finder features from the Internet or using your smartphone app. Ask a dealer or visit owners.acura.com (U.S.) or www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink (Canada).

The lights will stop flashing and horn will stop sounding under the following conditions:
• When 30 seconds have elapsed.
• You unlock the doors using the remote transmitter.
• You unlock the doors using the keyless access system.
• You unlock the doors using the built-in key.
• The power mode is set to ACCESSORY or ON.
Operator Assistance

Connect to the AcuraLink® operator when trying to find a destination or for roadside assistance.

1. Press the LINK button. 
   ▶ Connection to the operator begins.

2. Talk to the operator. 
   ▶ To disconnect, rotate ☺ to select Hang Up, select End Call on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™, or press the (Hang-Up/Back) button on the steering wheel.

Remain attentive to road conditions and driving during operator assistance.
AcuraLink® Message

AcuraLink® sends you messages on vehicle features, safety and emissions recall campaigns, maintenance reminders, and diagnostic information. When you receive a new message, an icon appears on the upper right corner of the audio/information screen.

AcuraLink® Message

Messages may not appear immediately after your vehicle purchase. It can take several days for your dealer to register your vehicle’s ID.

If an icon includes an exclamation point, it indicates that Acura gives high priority to this message compared to the one without.

• A: An unread message with high priority
• A: An unread message

Continued
### Message Category

There are six message categories.

- **Feature Guide**: Messages about your vehicle and its features are sent daily for the first 90 days.
- **Quick Tips**: Supplements your Owner’s Manual with updated vehicle information.
- **Scheduled Dealer Appointment**: An appointment made through the Acura server or Acura Owners website can be rescheduled or canceled from this option. 
  - [Dealer Appointments (U.S. only) P. 323](#)
- **Diagnostic Info**: Appears when a warning indicator or message comes on. Rotate ☰ to select Check Later or Check Now.
  - Selecting Check Now lets you know if you should see a dealer immediately or later in accordance with the warning severity level.
- **Maintenance Minder**: Lets you know which maintenance item is due along with a reminder message.
- **Recalls/Campaigns**: Reminds you of a recall or important safety information. You should also be notified by mail.

---

The types of messages you receive can be modified. Ask a dealer or visit owners.acura.com (U.S.) or [www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink](http://www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink) (Canada).

You can call your dealer, find the nearest dealer, or schedule appointments from the message options in Maintenance Minder, Recalls/Campaigns, and Diagnostic Info.

- [Message Options P. 322](#)
### Reading a Message

1. Press the INFO button, rotate to select AcuraLink/Messages, then press.
   - If your display has changed from Info menu to Current Drive, press the MENU button.
   - Select AcuraLink messages.
2. Rotate to select a category, then press.
   - If there are unread messages in a category, a message icon appears next to that category.
3. Rotate to select a message you want to read, then press.

---

**Reading a Message**

If there is no message listed on the menu, AcuraLink/Messages is grayed out and cannot be selected.

The message icon disappears once you read the message.

However, the exclamation mark that indicates that the message has a high priority remains.

- •: A read message with high priority.
While a message is displayed, you can use options to take immediate action regarding the message.

Available options are:

- **Voice**: Reads the message aloud. Select Stop to cancel it.
- **Find Acura Dlr.**: Searches for the nearest Acura dealer.
- **Delete**: Deletes the displayed message.
- **Call Your Dealer**: Calls your Acura dealer using HFL.
- **Schedule Dealer Appointment** (U.S. only): Automatically sets an appointment date at your dealer.
- **Phone number**: Dials a number displayed in the message via HFL.
- **Diagnostic Info**: Updates the current diagnostic message by connecting to the Acura server using HFL.

The available options vary by message category.
You can delete all messages in a category at once.
**Dealer Appointments (U.S. only)**

You can confirm the scheduled appointment date when you receive a Maintenance Minder or Recalls/Campaigns message, or reschedule any existing appointments.

1. Select a Maintenance Minder, Recalls/Campaigns, or Scheduled Dealer Appointment message.
2. Rotate to select Scheduled Dealer Appointment or Reschedule Appointment (depending on the screen). Press .
   - A suggested time and date are displayed.
3. Rotate to select Confirm Appointment. Press to accept the time and date.
4. Press to select OK.

**Dealer Appointments (U.S. only)**

To set up an automated dealer appointment when a regular maintenance is due, visit the Acura Owners website at owners.acura.com (U.S.) or www.acura.ca/owners/acuralink (Canada) and set the required option. A reminder message will be sent as the date for the dealer appointment approaches. A reminder message will also be sent if you schedule an appointment online using the Schedule Service Appointment function.

If you are not satisfied with the proposed appointment date and time, call your dealer directly.

To cancel the scheduled appointment, select Cancel Appointment when a message is displayed.
AcuraLink® Subscription Status

Confirm your AcuraLink® subscription status.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A-Link</td>
<td>You can check the signal strength.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Contract</td>
<td>The AcuraLink® subscription number and subscription level is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>You can confirm the type of service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscription</td>
<td>You can confirm the expiration date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The following message can be displayed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Check Antenna: There is a problem with the AcuraLink® antenna. Contact a dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• No data: The signal is received, but some error has occurred in the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• OK: The system is receiving the signal or traffic data*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
Rear Entertainment System

Rear seat passengers can enjoy a completely separate entertainment source than front passengers, including movies, games, and other audio choices.

Rear Entertainment System .................. 326
Auxiliary Console Panel ...................... 326
HDMI® Input Jack ................................ 327
Playable Discs .................................. 328
Rear Control Panel Operation .............. 329
  Selecting the Audio Source ............... 329
  Rear DVD Menu ................................. 330
  Screen and Surround Settings .............. 333
  Dual Screen Mode ............................ 335
  Replacing the Batteries .................... 337
Front Control Panel Operation ............ 338
  Selecting the Audio Source using front control panel .............................. 338
  Rear System Setup .......................... 339
  Setting the DVD Menu ...................... 340
Wireless Headphones ....................... 342
  Using the Wireless Headphones ......... 342
  Changing the Sound Source .............. 343
  Replacing the Batteries ................... 344

* Not available on all models
The Rear Entertainment System (RES) is operable from both the front control panel and the rear control panel.

- **Front Control Panel Operation** P. 338
- **Rear Control Panel Operation** P. 329

### Auxiliary Console Panel

Auxiliary input jacks and headphone connectors for the rear entertainment system are on the back of the center console compartment.

- **V** = Video jack
- **L** = Left audio jack
- **R** = Right audio jack

**■ Auxiliary Input Jacks**
The system will accept auxiliary inputs from standard video games and video equipment. Some video game power supplies may cause poor picture quality.

**■ Headphone Connectors**
There are two headphone connectors for the rear passengers. Each connector has its own volume control.
HDMI® Input Jack

There is an HDMI® input jack on the back of the center console compartment. The system will accept HDMI® input from video games and video equipment which are equipped with an HDMI® jack.

Open the outlet cover and insert the cable.
Rear Entertainment System

Playable Discs

The discs that come with these labels can be played in your vehicle’s rear entertainment system.

Also look for the region code of 1 or ALL on the package or jacket on the disc.

DVD-ROMs are not playable in this unit.

The disc packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

Also includes:

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com.
Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Digital Surround and Neural Surround are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
Rear Control Panel Operation

Selecting the Audio Source

1. Press the REAR (Power) button on the front control panel.
2. Press the SOURCE button on the rear control panel.
3. Select the audio source. Press the ENTER button.
   You can also change the audio source by the front control panel.

   ❙ Selecting the Audio Source using front control panel
   P. 338

4. Select a station, channel, track, or chapter using the CH/FOLDER, TUNE/SKIP, or CATEGORY bars.
Rear DVD Menu

MENU button (in the DVD mode)

Select an item. Press the ENTER button.

The following items are available:

- **Top Menu**: Displays the top menu of the DVD.
- **Menu**: Displays the menu of the DVD.
- **Play Mode**: Displays while a DVD is playing and changes the DVD’s audio, subtitle, or angle settings. 
  - Setting the Play Mode P. 331
- **Search/NumInput**: Skips to a title or chapter by entering the number. 
  - Searching a Title/Chapter P. 332
- **Repeat**: 
  - TITLE REPEAT: Repeats the current title.
  - CHAPTER REPEAT: Repeats the current chapter.
- **Pause/Play**: Pauses or resume the playback.
- **Stop**: Stops the playback.
- **Return**: Hides the rear audio menu.
Setting the Play Mode

MENU button (in the DVD mode) ➤ Play Mode

1. Select an item. Press the ENTER button.
2. Select an option. Press the ENTER button.

The following items are available:
- Audio: Selects the language of the DVD audio.
- Subtitle: Selects the language of the DVD subtitle.
- Angle: Selects the angle of a scene shot with multiple cameras.
Rear Control Panel Operation

Rear DVD Menu

Searching a Title/Chapter

MENU button (in the DVD mode) ➤ Search/NumInput

1. Select an item. Press the ENTER button.
2. Select a number. Press the ENTER button.

The following items are available:
- **Title**: Skips to a title you specify.
- **Chapter**: Skips to a chapter you specify.
- **NumInput**: Enters a number of a title or chapter to skip.

Enter a number and press the ENTER button. Select DONE.
Screen and Surround Settings

Select an item. Press the ENTER button.

The following items are available:

- **Brightness**: Adjusts the screen’s brightness. Adjust the brightness using the Interface Dial and press the ENTER button.
- **Appearance**: Selects the color of the rear menu screen.
- **Display Adjust**: Adjusts the screen’s preferences.
  - [Adjusting the Screen](#) P. 334
- **Aspect Ratio**: Selects an aspect ratio of the image.
  - [Setting the Aspect Ratio](#) P. 335
- **PERSONAL SURROUND**: Sets the surround of the wireless headphones. You can choose from three options: Music, Cinema, or Voice. Select Off to disable the feature.
- **Language**: Sets the system language used on all screens. You can choose from three languages: English, Français (French), or Español (Spanish).

Continued
Rear Control Panel Operation ► Screen and Surround Settings

■ Adjusting the Screen

 SETUP button (in the DVD mode) ► Display Adjust

1. Select an item. Press the ENTER button.
2. Make the adjustment. Press the ENTER button.

The following items are available:
• Contrast: Adjusts the screen’s contrast.
• Black Level: Adjusts the screen’s black level.
• Color: Adjusts the screen’s color strength.
• Tint: Adjusts the screen’s hue.
• Reset: Resets all the settings to their factory default.
Setting the Aspect Ratio

MENU button (in the DVD mode) ➤ Aspect Ratio

1. Select an item. Press the ENTER button.
2. Select an item. Press the ENTER button.

The following items are available:
- **Wide**: Selects the wide screen option (Normal, Full, Super Full, Ultra Full).
- **Zoom**: Selects the zoom screen option (Super Zoom, Ultra Zoom).

Dual Screen Mode

Select between the two screen modes, single or dual.

- **Single Mode**
  The selected source is displayed in the center of the screen.

- **Dual Mode**
  Two separate screens are displayed side by side. You can only select one output source from the front audio system. The other source must come from “REAR AUX Video” or “REAR AUX HDMI”.

Continued
Rear Control Panel Operation ▶ Dual Screen Mode

■ Single mode to Dual mode

Press the DUAL button.

Select the side (e.g., "Left").

Select a source (e.g., "REAR AUX Video").

■ Dual mode to Single mode

Press the SINGLE button.

Select a source (e.g., "DVD").
Replacing the Batteries

1. Remove the rear control panel.
   - Overhead Screen and Rear Control Panel P. 16
2. Open the cover.
3. Change the batteries.
   - Battery type: BR3032

An improperly disposed battery may harm the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.
Front Control Panel Operation

Operate the Rear Entertainment System (RES) from the front control panel.

Selecting the Audio Source using front control panel

1. Press the REAR (Power) button on the front control panel.
2. Press the REAR AUDIO button.
   ▶ The rear source is displayed on the front audio/information screen and the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
   ▶ The rear source is heard from the front speakers.
3. Select Rear Source on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
4. Select the audio source icon on the On Demand Multi-Use Display™.
5. Select a station, channel, track, or chapter in the same way as the front audio system.

Audio P. 181
Rear System Setup

The following items are available:

- **Source Select Popup**: Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the AUDIO button is pressed.
- **Rear Control**: Sets whether to use the rear control panel to control the RES.
  - On (factory default): Operates the RES using the rear control panel.
  - Off: Disables the feature.
- **Rear Speaker**: Sets the front audio source to play through the rear speakers, even when the RES is on. The RES source can only be heard through the wireless headphones.
  - On (factory default): Outputs the sound of the front source to the rear speakers.
  - Off: Disables the feature.
- **Single/Dual Screen Mode**: Selects a source to continue playing when you switch from dual mode to single mode on the overhead screen. Rotate to select a source and press .
Setting the DVD Menu

1. Rotate \( \text{\textcircled{1}} \) to select an item. Press \( \text{\textcircled{2}} \).
   - Select Advanced Function to display additional menu entries.

2. Rotate \( \text{\textcircled{1}} \) to select an option. Press \( \text{\textcircled{2}} \).

The following items are available:
- **Sound**: Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker’s sound.
  
  - Adjusting the Sound P. 193

- **Top Menu**: Displays the top menu of the DVD.
- **Menu**: Displays the menu of the DVD.
- **Repeat**:
  - Repeat Title: Repeats the current title.
  - Repeat Chapter: Repeats the current chapter.
Front Control Panel Operation

Setting the DVD Menu

- **Change Source**: Changes the audio source mode.
- **Play/Pause**: Pauses or resume the playback.
- **Stop**: Stops the playback.
- **Audio/Subtitle**: Selects the language of the DVD audio and the DVD subtitle.
- **Angle**: Selects the angle of a scene shot with multiple cameras.
- **Return**: Hides the DVD menu.
- **Number Input**: Enters a number of a title or chapter to skip.
- **Chapter/Title Search**: Skips to a title or chapter by Interface Dial.

On Demand Multi-Use Display™

1. Select More.
2. Select a setting item.

The following items are available:

- **Sound**: Displays the sound preferences screen.
  - Adjusting the Sound P. 193
- **Screen Settings**: Displays the screen preferences screen.
  - Changing the Screen Settings P. 89
Using the Wireless Headphones

Audio for the Rear Entertainment System is sent to the wireless headphones that come with the system.

1. Pivot the earpieces outward.

2. Adjust the volume by turning the dial on the bottom of the right earpiece.

3. Wear the headphones correctly with the left and right earpieces on the correct sides.
   ▶ L (left) and R (right) are marked on the sides of the frame.

When you remove the headphones, the earpieces automatically pivot inward, and the headphones turn off. When not in use, store the headphones in the back pocket of either front seat.

Some state and local government agencies prohibit the use of headphones by the driver of a motor vehicle. Always obey applicable laws and regulations.

You can use wired headphones through the auxiliary input jacks.

Auxiliary Console Panel P. 326
Changing the Sound Source

Wireless Headphones

In dual screen mode, you can switch the sound source of the wireless headphones between the left and right side screens.

Slide the tab to “L” for the left side, or “R” for the right side.

Changing the Sound Source

You can switch the sound source from the setup menu if you connected a set of wired headphones.

1. Press the SETUP button on the rear control panel.
2. Select Wired Headphones. Press the ENTER button.
3. Select Left or Right to switch the sound source. Press the ENTER button.
Replacing the Batteries

1. Insert a coin in the slot and twist it slightly to pry the cover away from the earpiece.
2. Pull the cover outward, and pivot it out of the way.
3. Remove the battery.
4. Install the new battery in the earpiece as shown in the diagram next to the battery slot.
   - Battery Type: AAA battery
5. Slide the cover back into place on the earpiece, then press down on the back edge to lock it in place.

Replacing the Batteries

The battery is under the cover on the left earpiece.

An improperly disposed battery may harm the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

If static is heard in the headphones, try replacing the battery.
Other Features

This section describes the useful functions incorporated into the navigation system.

Trip Computer ........................................... 346
Power Distribution Monitor ......................... 347
Calendar .................................................. 350
Information Functions ................................. 351
  System Device Information ....................... 351
  Map Data Update ...................................... 351
  Info Screen Preference ............................. 351
Multi-View Rear Camera* ............................ 353
Surround View Camera* .............................. 355
Troubleshooting ....................................... 377
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver................. 380

* Not available on all models
Trip Computer

INFO button ➤ Trip Computer

View the distance traveled and average fuel consumption. Move < or > to select the trip information.

The following items are available:
- **Current Drive**: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A**: Displays information for three previous histories. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
- **Delete History**: Deletes the trip information. Move < on the Trip A screen to select Delete History, then press . You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate > to select Yes, then press .

These values are estimates only.
Power Distribution Monitor

INFO button ► Power Distribution Monitor

Consists of the audio/information display showing the vehicle’s power flow and torque distribution indicators.

- **Power flow monitor**: Shows motor and engine power flow, indicating what supplies power to the vehicle, or if the battery is being charged.

### Power flow pattern

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Power flow pattern</th>
<th>Color of indicators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power is supplied by the motors and the engine.</td>
<td>Engine Icon (Engine on) Blue Power Flow Indicator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the display:

- **High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge**: Shows the current High Voltage battery charge level.

**Continued**
### Power Flow Pattern

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Power Flow Pattern</th>
<th>Color of Indicators</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power is only supplied by the motors.</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power is only supplied by the engine.</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The motors charge the High Voltage battery.</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Engine Icon*

*Power Flow Indicator*
SPORT HYBRID SH-AWD® torque distribution monitor
The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to each wheel or regenerative energy being supplied to the High Voltage battery. See the Owner’s Manual for instructions.

- How much torque is being transferred is shown in four scales. The indicators appear in blue.
- How much regenerative braking is being supplied to the High Voltage battery is shown in four scales. The indicators appear in green.
INFO button ➤ Calendar

View the calendar screen.

Move  or  to select the months of the year.
Information Functions

System Device Information

- **SETTINGS** button ➤ Navi Settings ➤ Map ➤ System Device Information

View database, software, device, and vehicle identification information.

- **System/Device information**
  - Database: USA / CANADA / MEXICO
  - Ver.: 1.0
  - Software: Ver.: 1.0
  - Device: 0000-0000-0000-0000
  - VIN: -------------------

Map Data Update

- **SETTINGS** button ➤ Navi Settings ➤ Map ➤ Map Data Update

Check the map data update status when updating the map database.

- **Map Data Update Status**

**System Device Information**

You will need this information when ordering a map update.

- Obtaining a Navigation Update P. 405

**Map Data Update**

This operation is only available during a database update.

- Obtaining a Navigation Update P. 405
Information Functions

Info Screen Preference

Select the top menu when the INFO button is pressed.

Rotate to select your desired setting item. Press .

The following options are available:

- **Info Top**: A brief menu pops up.
- **Info Menu** (factory default): A full menu pops up.
- **Off**: A menu does not pop up.
Multi-View Rear Camera*

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

Your vehicle is equipped with a multi-view rear camera. When you select gear position [R], the rear view is displayed on the audio/information screen. The edge of the bumper and parking guide lines are also displayed.

Rotate 📊 to adjust the screen brightness.
While the rear view is displayed, press 📊 to switch between WIDE, NORMAL, and TOP DOWN view modes.

Always keep the camera lens clean and unobstructed. The multi-view rear camera has a lens that makes distances appear different than they actually are. Always take care when reversing, and look behind you for obstacles.

Navigation controls are disabled when in Reverse.

Adjusting the brightness for the multi-view rear camera display does not affect the brightness for the audio/information screen.

If you turn the guide lines off, they remain off until you turn them back on.

The last used viewing mode is selected the next time you shift into Reverse. However, once the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), WIDE mode is selected if TOP DOWN view was last used.

You can change the Fixed Guideline and Dynamic Guideline settings.

Customized Features P. 90

If you select gear position out of [R] in Top down view mode, then select [R] again 10 seconds later, Wide view mode is selected.

* Not available on all models
Multi-View Rear Camera

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

Screen display

Guide lines
Bumper

Camera

Approx. 1.7 ft (50 cm)
Tailgate open range
Approx. 3.3 ft (1 m)
Approx. 6.6 ft (2 m)
Approx. 9.8 ft (3 m)

WIDE
NORMAL
TOP DOWN

Multi-View Rear Camera*:

Fixed Guideline
On: Guidelines appear when you select gear position R.

Off: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline
On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move.

* Not available on all models
Surround View Camera *

The Surround View Camera System allows the driver to check the blind spots through the images displayed on the audio/information screen.

Using this support system will reduce the driver’s stress in the following situations.
- Backing up the vehicle into a parking space marked with parking lines.
- Checking both ways at intersections with poor visibility.
- Parallel-parking in a parking space marked with parking lines.
- Checking for obstacles in front of the vehicle.
- Checking for obstacles at the rear of the vehicle.
- Checking for obstacles around the front right and left sides of the vehicle.

Always keep the camera lens clean and unobstructed. The rearview camera has a lens that makes distances appear different than they actually are. Always take care when backing up, and look behind you for obstacles.

Navigation controls are disabled when in Reverse.

Adjusting the brightness for the camera display does not affect the brightness of the audio/information screen.

If you turn the guide lines off, they remain off until you turn them back on.

The Surround View Camera System is designed to reduce the driver’s stress of operating the vehicle. Use this system as support for visual checks to confirm the safety in areas likely to be blind spots.

The Surround View Camera System does not eliminate all blind spots. Visually confirm safety around the vehicle with your own eyes and the mirrors. Do not rely on the camera view.

* Not available on all models
Camera locations and images

Your vehicle is equipped with four cameras. They provide different views and also a synthetically combined ground view. The views appear differently during the day and at night.

Because a unique camera lens is used, objects viewed in the audio/information screen appear closer or farther than they actually are and/or distorted. The further the objects are, the more apparent this becomes.
Displaying the Surround View Camera Screen

Using the CAMERA Button

Press the CAMERA button while the vehicle is stopped or running slower than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- Displays the front view. To switch the screen, press the CAMERA button.
- Press other mode buttons to exit the Surround View Camera System.

Displaying the Surround View Camera Screen

Operating the navigation system or audio system while the Surround View Camera System screen is displayed closes the Surround View Camera System screen and starts up the navigation system screen.

Using the CAMERA Button

Even when the Surround View Camera System screen is displayed, the display automatically switches to the audio/information screen if the vehicle speed exceeds 9 mph (15 km/h), and it switches back to the multi-view camera system screen if the speed is reduced to below 7 mph (12 km/h).*1

*1: For the rear view, the screen does not automatically switch based on the vehicle speed.

Continued
Surround View Camera

Displaying the Surround View Camera Screen

Using the Shift Button

Change the gear position to [R] with the brake pedal depressed.
- Displays the rear view. To switch the screen, press the CAMERA button.

Using the CAMERA Button

When the vehicle is decelerating rapidly, it may appear before it reaches 7 mph (12 km/h). If you press the CAMERA button while the vehicle speed is more than 7 mph (12 km/h), a message screen appears. When the vehicle speed is less than 7 mph (12 km/h), it switches to the Surround View Camera System screen.

Using the Shift Button

If you do not touch any switches after changing the gear position to the [R] position, the display switches from the Rear View screen to the previous screen when the gear position is changed out of [R]. If you touch any switches while the gear position is in [R], the display switches from the Rear View screen to the Front View screen when the gear position is changed out of [R].

You can customize the display setting.

Customized Surround View Camera System P. 375

You can adjust the brightness of the rearview camera.

Display Settings P. 28
Switching the Screen

- Front View Screen (When Gear Position is in Other than [R] Position)

In the view image fixed guidelines are displayed which help the driver get a sense of distance between the vehicle and objects.

Dynamic guidelines are displayed which help the driver confirm the projected vehicle path.

The guidelines can be turned ON/OFF to setup.

The positions/distances indicated by the guide lines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors. The guide lines should be used as a reference only.

You can also select to switch the display for the following marks on the screen.

- Front Ground View
- Front Blind View
- Right Side View/Left and Right Side View
**Surround View Camera**

Switching the Screen

---

### Rear View Screen (When Gear Position is in [R] Position)

- **Rear Ground View**
- **Rear Normal View**
- **Rear Wide View**

**CAUTION**

Visually confirm safety around the vehicle with your own eyes and/or using the mirrors. The view area displayed on the screen is restricted. It may not show all people or obstacles around you. Relying only on the view on the screen may cause an accident.

Minimize the time spent looking at the view screen while driving. Failure to do so may cause an accident as you cannot pay sufficient attention to your surroundings.

You can also select to switch the display for the following marks on the screen:

- Rear Ground View
- Rear Normal View
- Rear Wide View

- **CAMERA** button or **ENTER** button
Backing Up The Vehicle into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

When backing up the vehicle into a parking space with parking lines, the parking guide lines of the Surround View Camera System provide support to the driver during parking.

■ Before Parking

The rear reference guide lines of the Surround view camera system can be used in a parking space marked with parking lines, such as that shown in the figure below.
Surround View Camera

Backing Up The Vehicle into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

Selecting Rear Reference Lines

1. Press the CAMERA button while the vehicle is stopped.
2. Press the MENU button.
How to park

The following section describes how to back up the vehicle into a parking space with the rear right of the vehicle in first.

1. Move the vehicle forward perpendicular to the parking space and stop where the initial positioning guide comes to the center of the parking space.

2. Turn the steering wheel fully to the left while stopped.
   ▶️ The steering position alignment guide is displayed.

How to park

When you need operation instruction, press and hold the CAMERA button while the parking guide screen is displayed. The instruction screen appears on the screen. To close the Instruction screen, press the BACK button or press and hold the CAMERA button.
**Surround View Camera**

**Back up the vehicle into a parking space marked with parking lines**

3. Slowly move the vehicle forward with the steering wheel turned fully to the left.

4. Stop the vehicle when the steering position alignment guide enters the parking space.

5. Turn the steering wheel fully to the left while stopped and back up the vehicle slowly.

6. Stop the vehicle when it is parallel to the parking lines.

7. Straighten the steering wheel, back up, and park the vehicle in the proper position.

**How to park**

If the steering position alignment guide does not fit in the parking lines, the parking space is too small for the vehicle. This system does not work for:

- Parking spaces with crooked parking lines.
- Parking spaces where the surrounding vehicles are parked off the parking lines.
Parallel Parking the Vehicle into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

The parallel parking guide lines of the Surround View Camera System provide support to the driver while parking in parking spaces, such as that shown in the figure below.

Before Parking

The rear reference guide lines of the Surround View Camera System can be used in a parking space marked with parking lines, such as that shown in the figure below.

You may need to try more than once before parking the vehicle in the parking space properly depending on the condition of the space. In such a case, adjust the vehicle position while looking around the vehicle to park the vehicle in the proper parking position.
Parallel Parking the Vehicle into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

■ Selecting Parallel Park Reference Lines

1. Press the CAMERA button while the vehicle is stopped.
2. Press the MENU button.
3. Select Left parallel park guidance or Right parallel park guidance.
How to park

The following section describes how to parallel-park the vehicle into a parking space at the right side of the street.

1. Move the vehicle forward parallel to the parking space and stop where the initial positioning guide overlaps the front corner of the parking space.

2. Turn the steering wheel fully to the right while stopped.
   ► The steering position alignment guide is displayed.

How to park

When you need operation instruction, press and hold the CAMERA button while the parking guide screen is displayed. The instruction screen appears on the screen. To close the Instruction screen, select press the BACK button or press and hold the CAMERA button.
Surround View Camera® Parallel Parking the Vehicle into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

3. Slowly back up the vehicle with the steering wheel turned fully to the right.

4. Stop the vehicle when the steering position alignment guide overlaps the sideline of the parking space.

5. Turn the steering wheel fully to the left while stopped and back up the vehicle slowly.

6. Stop the vehicle when it is parallel to the parking lines.

7. Straighten the steering wheel, and then back up and park the vehicle at the proper position.

How to park

Always take care when backing up, and look behind you for obstacles.

This system does not work for:

- Parking spaces with crooked parking lines.
- Parking spaces where the surrounding vehicles are parked off the parking lines.
- Parking spaces without parking lines.
Checking for Obstacles at the Rear of the Vehicle

Display the rear view screen to check for any obstacles at the rear of the vehicle when backing up the vehicle into a garage or the like. Switch between the rear view and ground view, as well as the rear view and mirror view accordingly.

Each guide line display can be turned ON/OFF. The four cameras provide the ground view on the screen even when the door mirrors are folded. Note that the view area and blind spots change when the door mirrors are folded.

Do not drive the vehicle with the door mirrors folded. The view displayed on the screen when the door mirrors are folded is for confirming the safety around the vehicle during parking.
Surround View Camera* Checking for Obstacles at the Rear of the Vehicle

Description and operation of the screens

Change the gear position to **R**.

Display the rear ground view screen.

Rear view

Distance the projection lines indicate.

The view image from the rear camera. View area of the screen and distances the reference lines indicate.

Rear and Ground View screen

Ground view

An overhead view image of the vehicle synthesized from the images from the four cameras. When the steering wheel is turned, the projection lines that show the vehicle's projected trajectory and tire angles are displayed. Blind spots appear in black. Blind spots are to appear black. The projection lines are displayed 40cm outside of the vehicle body.

Press the **CAMERA** button to change the screen to the rear wide view and the rear normal view screen.

Press the **CAMERA** button to change the screen to the rear wide view and the rear normal view screen.
Surround View Camera

Checking for Obstacles at the Rear of the Vehicle

Each side view is not displayed when the door mirrors are folded.

The view image from the rear camera.

- Tailgate
- 39 inches (1 m)
- 79 inches (2 m)
- 118 inches (3 m)

Rear Normal View

Rear Wide View

Press the CAMERA button to change the screen to the rear ground view screen.
Checking the Right and Left Sides of the Vehicle at Intersections with Poor Visibility

Display the front blind view screen when conforming the right and left sides of the vehicle at intersections with poor visibility.

- Description and Operation of the Screens
  To switch the screens, press the CAMERA button when the vehicle speed is below 7 mph (12 km/h).
  - Display the front blind view screen.

As the system uses a wide-angle view, the displayed images on the screen will be largely distorted and different from the actual distance.

The front blind view screen is switched in the order shown in the figure on P. 359.
Checking for Obstacles in Front of the Vehicle

Display the front view and ground view screen to check for any obstacles in front of the vehicle when parking the vehicle in a garage or the like.

Description and Operation of the Screens
To switch the screens, press the CAMERA button when the vehicle speed is below 7 mph (12 km/h).

Display the front view and ground view screen.

- Front view
  - The view image from the front camera.
  - View area of the screen and distances the reference lines indicate.

- Front view and ground view screen

- Ground view
  - An overhead view image of the vehicle synthesized from the images from the four cameras.

- Motion that the projection lines indicate

- 39 inches (1 m)

- Turn the steering wheel

- When the steering wheel is turned, the projection lines that show the vehicle’s projected trajectory and tire angles are displayed.

- Blind spots appear in black.

CAUTION

Do not drive the vehicle with the door mirrors folded.
The view displayed on the screen when the door mirrors are folded is for confirming the safety around the vehicle during parking.
Surround View Camera

Checking for Obstacles Around the Front Sides of the Vehicle

Display the side view screen to check the right and left sides of the vehicle when pulling up the vehicle to a curve or tollbooth or passing an oncoming car in a narrow driving condition.

The left side view screen displays only the left side view, and the right and left side view screen display the views of both sides. Switch the screens accordingly.

Description and Operation of the Screens

Display the side view and ground view screen.

To switch the screens, press the CAMERA button when the vehicle speed is below 7 mph (12 km/h).

Each guide line display can be turned ON/OFF.

When the door mirrors are folded, the side view screen is not displayed.

The side view screen is switched in the order shown in the figure on P. 359.
Customized Surround View Camera System

Set the camera screen settings.

The following items are available:

- **Fixed Guideline**: Sets whether to turn the display of the reference lines on or off.
  - *On*: Displays the reference lines.
  - *Off*: Disables the feature.

- **Dynamic Guideline**: Sets whether to turn the display of the projection lines on or off.
  - *On*: Displays the projection lines.
  - *Off*: Disables the feature.

- **Automatically Show Camera After Reverse**: Sets whether to automatically switch between the cameras to use when the gear position is changed out of *R* to move the vehicle forward.
  - *On*
  - *Off*
• **Default Camera Mode in Forward**: Sets which screen to display when the multi-view camera system is turned on while the vehicle is moving forward.  
- Front ground view  
- Last Used  
- Front blind view  
- Side view  

• **Default Camera Mode in Reverse**: Sets which screen to display when the multi-view camera system is turned on while the vehicle is backing up.  
- Rear ground view  
- Last Used  
- Rear normal view  
- Rear wide view  

• **Show Camera When Decelerating**: Sets whether to automatically return the display to the camera view screen when the vehicle speed is reduced to lower than 7 mph (12 km/h), after the display is switched from the camera view screen to audio/information screen when the vehicle speed exceeds 9 mph (15 km/h) while the Surround View Camera System is on.  
- On  
- Off  

• **Clear Parking Guidance Automatically**: Sets whether to automatically turn the display of the parking guide lines off or not.  
- On: Displays the parking guide lines.  
- Off: Disables the feature.  

• **Display**: Adjust the screen’s preferences.
# Troubleshooting

## Backing up using the parking guide lines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle position</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
<th>Reference page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turns too big.</td>
<td>Did you turn the steering wheel before the initial positioning guide enters the parking space?</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the initial positioning guide comes to the center of parking space.</td>
<td>P. 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did you turn the steering wheel before the steering position alignment guide enters the parking space while backing up?</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the steering position alignment guide fits in the parking space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did you fully turn the steering wheel while backing up?</td>
<td>Fully turn the steering wheel when steering.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turns too short.</td>
<td>Did you turn the steering wheel after the initial positioning guide comes outside of the parking space?</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the initial positioning guide comes to the center of the parking space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did the steering position alignment guide come off of the parking space while backing up?</td>
<td>Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the steering position alignment guide fits in the parking space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The projection line is off.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The position is automatically corrected after continuing to drive for a short amount of time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Troubleshooting

## Parallel-parking using the parking guide lines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vehicle position</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
<th>Reference page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Too deep.</td>
<td>Did the steering position alignment guide come off of the curbside line of the parking space while backing up?</td>
<td>- Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the steering position alignment guide overlaps with the curbside line of the parking space.</td>
<td>Parallel Parking the Vehicle into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines P. 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did you fully turn the steering wheel while backing up?</td>
<td>- Fully turn the steering wheel when steering.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too shallow.</td>
<td>Did you turn the steering wheel before the steering position alignment guide overlaps with the curbside line of the parking space while backing up?</td>
<td>- Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the steering position alignment guide overlaps with the curbside line of the parking space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too close to the vehicle in front.</td>
<td>Did you turn the steering wheel when the initial positioning guide is outside of the parking space?</td>
<td>- Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the initial positioning guide comes to the corner of the parking space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too close to the vehicle behind.</td>
<td>Was the initial positioning guide inside of the parking space?</td>
<td>- Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel when the initial positioning guide comes to the corner of the parking space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did you fully turn the steering wheel while backing up?</td>
<td>- Fully turn the steering wheel when steering.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The projection line is off.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>- The position is automatically corrected after continuing to drive for a short amount of time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### About camera view image

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
<th>Refer to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Camera view images are hard to see. | The images may not be displayed clearly when:  
• At night, in rainy condition, and a dark location.  
• The camera lens has insects, moist, or debris stuck to the camera lens.  
• The camera lens is scratched.  
• The temperature of the camera is high.  
• Strong light such as the sun’s light shines on the camera.*1  
• When light shines on the camera in a dark location.  
*1: When strong light shines on the camera, halation which fogs around the light source or smearing which creates the streaks of the light may occur. | • When the camera view image is not clearly displayed due to weather conditions, etc, visually confirm the safety using mirrors. | - |
| Camera view images are not clear. | If the camera lens is dirty, clear images are not displayed. | • When the camera lens is dirty, wipe off the dirt, debris, and the like using water, mild detergent, or glass cleaner.  
• Never use any benzine, thinner, or polishing powder such as cleanser. It will cause damage to the lens. | - |
| Camera position is shifted. | The camera body or its surrounding parts have been subject to some severe impact or pressure. | • Do not have any severe impacts or pressures on the camera body or its surrounding parts.  
• In case of being subject to an impact, stop using the camera and contact a dealer. | - |
The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

**Important Safety Precautions**

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door’s path.
Training HomeLink

If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit http://www.homelink.com or call (800) 355-3515.
Training a Button

1. Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1 to 3 inches (3 - 8 cm) from the HomeLink button you want to program.

2. Press and release the desired HomeLink button. Hold the button on the remote transmitter. Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) change from slowly blinking to constantly on or rapidly blinking? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

   YES

   Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a sec. Does the device (garage door opener) work?

   YES

   NO

   NO

3. Press and release the HomeLink button. Press and release the button on the remote every 2 secs. Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) change from slowly blinking to constantly on or rapidly blinking? The process should take less than 60 seconds.

   YES

4. Press and hold the HomeLink button again.

   Training Complete

   HomeLink LED is constantly on.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button again. The remote-controlled device should operate.

   Training Complete

6. The remote has a rolling code. Press the “learn” button on the remote-controlled device (e.g. garage door opener).

   A. Within 30 secs, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 secs.

   B. Training Complete

Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink.

2. Quickly release the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under “Training a Button.” You do not need to press and release the HomeLink button again in step 2.

   Standard transmitter
   Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

   Rolling code transmitter
   Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device’s instructions, visit www.homelink.com, or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.
# Troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Map, Voice, Entering Destinations</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance, Routing</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update, Coverage, Map Errors</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display, Accessories</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-View Rear Camera</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous Questions</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Messages</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation System</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD Player</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod/USB Flash Drive</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandora®*</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aha™ Radio</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surround View Camera *</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
# Troubleshooting

## Map, Voice, Entering Destinations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Startup Confirmation screen is displayed every time I start the car.</td>
<td>This is normal. The Startup Confirmation screen reminds you and your guest drivers to always operate the navigation system in a safe manner. The Startup Confirmation screen goes off after a certain period of time and the top screen of the last mode is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system reboots by itself (returns to the opening screen).</td>
<td>A reboot can be caused by extreme temperatures or shock from bumpy roads, and does not necessarily indicate a problem. If this happens frequently, please see a dealer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| How do I specify a destination when an entered city or street could not be found? | • Try entering the street first. Some cities are lumped in with a major metro area. In rural "unverified" areas or new subdivisions, streets may be missing or only partially numbered.  
  • Try selecting the destination directly from the map.  
  ![Map Input](#) P. 148 |
| Why do some letters become grayed out when I enter an address?          | As you enter each letter in an address or a place/landmark, the navigation system looks in the database to see what letters are possible and grays out letters that do not apply. |
| How do I delete Personal Addresses, Previous Destinations, or the Home Address? | 1. Press the SETTINGS button. Select Navi Settings > Personal Info to display the types of information.  
  2. Select the type of address to delete.  
  3. Select Delete. |
| I cannot hear the navigation system voice.                              | 1. Press the SETTINGS button. Select System Settings and check that Guidance Volume is not set to 0.  
| Why is Call grayed out on the Calculate Route screen?                   | Your phone is not paired to Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® or, if paired, your phone is in use.  
  ![Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®](#) P. 266 |
## Troubleshooting

### Map, Voice, Entering Destinations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The voice control system is having difficulty recognizing my voice commands. | Check that the vents are not blowing air onto the microphone on the ceiling, the vehicle is as quiet as possible, and you are using the correct command when speaking.  
[Voice Recognition](#) P. 25 |
| I cannot give voice commands.                                          | Make sure you selected **OK** at the Startup Confirmation screen.  
[Start-up](#) P. 22 |
| I cannot select an option using the Interface Dial.                    | To reduce potential driver distraction, certain onscreen functions and features are limited or inoperable while the vehicle is moving. Use voice commands or pull over to proceed. |
| The navigation system pronunciation of street names in the guidance command or destination address sounds strange. | The basic guidance phrases use a studio-recorded voice, but street names are pronounced using a machine-generated voice. Consequently, the name may be mispronounced or sound strange at times. |
| The screen is bright when I drive at night.                           | 1. Check that the nighttime dashboard brightness control is not set to maximum.  
2. Press the **SETTINGS** button. Select **Navi Settings > Map > Color (Night)**.  
[Color](#) P. 75 |
| The screen is dark when I drive during the day.                       | Press the **SETTINGS** button. Select **Navi Settings > Map > Color (Day)**.  
[Color](#) P. 75 |
| How do I change or remove my PIN?                                     | 1. Press the **SETTINGS** button. Select **Navi Settings > Personal Info > PIN Number > Address Book PIN** or **Go Home PIN**.  
2. Enter your existing PIN. You then have the choice to change or remove the PIN.  
[PIN Numbers](#) P. 49 |
| I have forgotten my PIN. How do I reset the PIN for Home or the PIN for personal addresses? | A dealer must reset the PIN for you. |
# Troubleshooting

## Traffic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Traffic information is missing or is not displaying properly. What is wrong? | - Check that the traffic status indicator is available on the map screen.  
  - Traffic Information*/AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic* P. 10  
  - Traffic information relies on a clear signal. If signal strength is low, traffic data may not be available.  
  - Check that the traffic icons are turned on.  
  - Showing Icons on Map P. 73  
  - Check the AcuraLink® subscription status.*1  
  - AcuraLink® P. 314  
  - There may be a temporary technical problem in your metropolitan area. Call Acura Client Relations to see if there is an outage.  
  - Acura Client Relations Contact Information P. 404  
  - If the situation persists, see your Acura dealer for assistance.  
  - Traffic information is available only in certain areas. |
| The navigation system sometimes provides a detour route when I am driving a route on the freeway/highway. | If Traffic Rerouting is set to On, the navigation system provides a detour route to your destination only if it can find a significantly faster route than the original one.  
  - Traffic Rerouting P. 60 |
| The navigation system routes me to an exit and an alternate freeway/highway with unknown flow speeds or surface streets. | The navigation system predicts which route should be faster based on freeway/highway congestion along your route. Use your own experience to determine whether the alternate route would be faster. |
| How can I ignore the detour route and return to the original route? | Press the SETTINGS button. Select Navi Settings > Routing, and set Traffic Rerouting to Off.  
  - Traffic Rerouting P. 60 |

*1: Canadian models

* Not available on all models
## Guidance, Routing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system does not route me the same way I would go or the same way as other mapping systems.</td>
<td>The navigation system attempts to generate the optimal route. You can change the route preferences used when calculating a route. <a href="#">Route Preference</a> P. 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system wants to route me around potential traffic problems. How do I stop these pop-up messages?</td>
<td>Press the <strong>SETTINGS</strong> button. Select Navi Settings &gt; Routing, and set Traffic Rerouting to Off. <a href="#">Traffic Rerouting</a> P. 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The street I’m on is not shown on the map screen.</td>
<td>The mapping database is constantly undergoing revision. You can access the most recent information on the internet. <a href="#">Map Coverage</a> P. 405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The vehicle position icon is not following the road and the “GPS icon” text in the upper left hand corner of the screen is white or missing.</td>
<td>This is normal. The signals received from the GPS satellites are extremely weak and can easily be interrupted or interfered as your vehicle travel near tall buildings or in tunnels. Check your vehicle surroundings for anything that may be blocking the reception. If this happens frequently and there is no obstruction that is interfering with reception, please see a dealer. <a href="#">GPS</a> P. 402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The blue highlighted route and voice guidance stopped or turned into a blue/pink line before I got to my destination.</td>
<td>Your route has entered an unverified area. <a href="#">Unverified Routing</a> P. 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do I stop the map from rotating as I drive along?</td>
<td>Press the <strong>SETTINGS</strong> button. Select Navi Settings &gt; Map &gt; View &gt; North-up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The “time to destination” display sometimes increases even though I am getting closer to my destination.</td>
<td>If your speed reduces due to slower traffic, the navigation system updates the “time to destination” based on your actual road speed to give you a better estimate of arrival time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The vehicle position icon on the map “lags” a short distance behind, especially when I arrive at an intersection.</td>
<td>This is normal. The navigation system is unaware of the width of intersections. Large differences in vehicle position can indicate a temporary loss of the GPS signal. <a href="#">GPS</a> P. 402</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Troubleshooting

### Guidance, Routing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The screen is showing white dots as I drive along.</td>
<td>These dots are called “breadcrumbs.” These are displayed if <strong>Display Tracking</strong> is set to <strong>On</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do I remove the white dots (“breadcrumbs”) from my screen?</td>
<td>Press the <strong>SETTINGS</strong> button. Select <strong>Navi Settings &gt; Map</strong>, set <strong>Display Tracking</strong> to <strong>Off</strong> or select <strong>Delete Tracking</strong> to remove the white dots from the map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A road that I selected to avoid is being used when routing.</td>
<td>When you “draw” your area to avoid, make sure to select sections of roads that include at least one intersection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My elevation (shown when I display the current position) seems to fluctuate even though my elevation has not changed.</td>
<td>This is normal. The elevation can vary ±100 ft (±30 m) due to GPS calculation errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My elevation is missing on the “current position” screen.</td>
<td>The elevation is only displayed if the GPS antenna can receive signals from at least four satellites. Try moving the vehicle into an open area. The elevation is also not displayed if the calculated elevation is zero or below sea level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Avoided Area** P. 62

**Display Tracking** P. 86

**GPS** P. 402
Update, Coverage, Map Errors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My city is not part of a fully verified detailed coverage area.</td>
<td>The mapping database is constantly undergoing revision. You can access the most recent information on the internet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Map Coverage] P. 405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the navigation system work outside North America?</td>
<td>The navigation system contains maps for the 50 U.S. states, Canada, Puerto Rico, and Mexico. The navigation system will not work in other countries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Map Coverage] P. 405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do I report errors I find in the database?</td>
<td>Minor errors are bound to occur in a large database. If you encounter major errors, see your dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Visiting Your Dealer] P. 404</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Display, Accessories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The display appears dim when starting the car in really cold weather.</td>
<td>This is normal. The display will become brighter after a few minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Multi-View Rear Camera

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When I shift gears, the rear camera image display is delayed.</td>
<td>This is normal. When shifting into or out of Reverse, you may experience a delay while the screen image switches between the audio/information screen and the rear camera image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The rear camera image is too dark or too bright. How do I adjust the brightness?</td>
<td>While the camera image is displayed, rotate the Interface Dial to adjust the brightness. This adjustment does not affect the audio/information screen brightness settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Troubleshooting

### Miscellaneous Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My battery was disconnected or went dead, and the navigation system is asking for a code.</td>
<td>Set the power mode to ON, and press and hold the (Power) button for two seconds. The system should reactivate. If you have installed an aftermarket system, contact a dealer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Surround View Camera*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When I shift gears, the rear camera image display is delayed.</td>
<td>This is normal. When shifting into or out of Reverse, you may experience a delay while the screen image switches between the audio/information screen and the rear camera image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The rear camera image is too dark or too bright.</td>
<td>While the camera image is displayed, press the SETTINGS button and select Camera Settings &gt; Surround View Camera &gt; Preference &gt; Display, and select or to adjust the brightness. This adjustment does not affect the audio/information screen brightness settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
## Error Messages

### Navigation System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The display temperature is too high. For protection, the system will shut off until the display cools down.</td>
<td>This message appears briefly when the display temperature is too high. The navigation system turns off until the display cools down. The system turns back on automatically when the display cools down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system temperature is too low. For protection, the system will shut off until the it warms up.</td>
<td>The navigation system has difficulty reading the HDD when the temperature is below approximately -22°F (-30°C). The navigation system starts up automatically when the display warms up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system atmospheric pressure is too low. For protection, the system will shut off until the pressure returns to safe levels.</td>
<td>The HDD is inoperable due to low atmospheric pressure. Move your vehicle to the place where the atmospheric pressure is high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system temperature is too high. For protection, the system will shut off until it cools down.</td>
<td>The navigation system has difficulty reading the HDD when the temperature is high. The navigation system starts up automatically when the system cools down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDD access error. Please consult your dealer.</td>
<td>Writing of the data to the HDD failed with a cause other than low temperature, high temperature, and low atmospheric pressure. After a short wait, try to operate the system again. If this does not solve the problem, consult with the dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDD access error. The system will reset and attempt to correct the problem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unplayable File</td>
<td>Track/file format not supported</td>
<td>• Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual</td>
<td>Mechanical error</td>
<td>• Press the (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Mecha Error                          |                        | • Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.  
  \[ Protecting CDs P. 226 \]
| Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual | Servo error            | • If the error message reappears, press the (eject) button, and pull out the disc.  
  • Insert a different disc.  
  If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.  
  • If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer.  
  Do not try to force the disc out of the player. |
| Check Disc                           | Disc error             | • Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.  
  \[ Protecting CDs P. 226 \]
| Heat Error                           | High temperature       | • Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared. |
# Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio

If an error occurs while playing the Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDD access error. Please consult your dealer.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system temperature is too high. For protection, the system will shut off until it cools down.</td>
<td>Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The navigation system temperature is too low. For protection, the system will shut off until it warms up.</td>
<td>The navigation system has difficulty reading the HDD when the temperature is below approximately -22°F (-30°C). The navigation system starts up automatically when the display warms up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplayable File</td>
<td>Appears when a file format not supported. Current track will be skipped. The next supported track plays automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USB Error</td>
<td>Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incompatible USB Device</td>
<td>Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please Check Owner’s Manual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UnsUPPORTED Version</td>
<td>Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version. Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect Retry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplayable File</td>
<td>Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Data</td>
<td>iPod Appears when the iPod is empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsupported</td>
<td>Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incompatible USB Device</td>
<td>Appears when an incompatible device is connected.</td>
<td>Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no station list in the device. Please add the station list to your device.</td>
<td>Appears when there is no station list on the device.</td>
<td>Use the device to create a station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music licenses force us to limit the number of tracks you may skip each hour.</td>
<td>Appears when you try to skip a song or select Dislike over the predetermined number of times in an hour.</td>
<td>Try again later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to save rating. Unable to save bookmark.</td>
<td>Appears when the commanded operation has failed.</td>
<td>Try again later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No data</td>
<td>Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated.</td>
<td>Reboot the app and reconnect the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsupported</td>
<td>Appears when Pandora® version is not supported.</td>
<td>Update Pandora® to the latest version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PANDORA App version is not supported.</td>
<td>Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance.</td>
<td>Try again later.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Not available on all models
## Error Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Cannot connect to PANDORA. When stopped, check your mobile device.           | The Pandora® app failed to start because of the following device errors:  
  - The display on your smartphone is turned off.  
  - Your smartphone is locked.  
  - The home screen or the app screen (music screen) is not displayed on your smartphone.  
  - The track is not played on your smartphone even after 30 seconds have passed.  
  - The Pandora® app is not installed in your device, or the Pandora® version is not supported.                                                                 | • Turn the phone screen on, and make sure it is unlocked.  
• The Pandora® version is not supported. Update to the latest version.                                                                                                           |
| When not driving, please see mobile device.                                  | The Pandora® app in your smartphone is not compatible with the app launcher system.                                                                                                                                              | Download the most recent version of the Pandora® app.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                              | The required app is not installed.                                                                                                                                                                                              | Download the HondaLink app from [www.hondalink.com](http://www.hondalink.com).                                                                                                                                                        |
| The maximum number of stations that can be created is 100. To create more,   | Appears when the number of created stations reaches the limitation.                                                                                                                                                            | Delete the unneeded stations from the Station List.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| please delete one or more previously created stations.                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Unable to create new station. Please try again.                             | Appears when you try to create a new station.                                                                                                                                                                                  | Try again later.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
## Error Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later.</td>
<td>Appears when you try to play PANDORA.</td>
<td>Try again later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to play PANDORA. Music licensing restricts play in this area.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Try again later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to play PANDORA. When stopped, log-in to PANDORA.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Log in to the PANDORA server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This PANDORA station is currently not available. Please select another station.</td>
<td>Appears when the station you selected is not currently available.</td>
<td>Select another station.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Troubleshooting

Error Messages

**Aha™ Radio**

If an error occurs while playing Aha™ Radio, you may see the following error messages.
If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cannot connect to AcuraLink. When stopped, check your mobile device.</td>
<td>Appears when the Aha™ app is not activated. Check your device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual</td>
<td>Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Surround View Camera***

If an error message is displayed, contact a dealer.

---

* Not available on all models
Reference Information

System Initialization .................................. 400
  Entering the Security Code .................... 400
  Acquiring GPS Information .................. 400
  Startup Confirmation Screen .................. 401
  Map Matching .................................... 401
System Limitations ................................ 402
  GPS ............................................. 402
  Address Calculation ................................ 402
  Database ..................................... 402
Client Assistance .................................. 404
  Resolving Problems ............................ 404
  Acura Client Relations Contact Information .... 404
  Visiting Your Dealer ........................... 404
  Map Coverage .................................. 405

Obtaining a Navigation Update ............... 405
Traffic Information ................................. 406
Operation in Alaska, Hawaii, Canada, Puerto Rico, and Mexico ......................... 406

Legal Information .................................. 407
  Copyrights ..................................... 407
  User Agreements ................................ 407
  As required by the FCC ........................ 412
System Initialization

The navigation system must be initialized if power to the navigation system is interrupted for any reason (e.g., the battery was disconnected).

**Entering the Security Code**

In most cases, you do not need to enter a security code. Follow the steps below to reactivate the system.

1. Set the power mode to ON, and turn on the audio system.
2. Press and hold the (Power) button for more than two seconds.
   - The system is reactivated when the system’s control unit recognizes that the system is in your vehicle.
   - If the control unit fails to recognize, you must go to a dealer and have the system checked.

**Acquiring GPS Information**

Depending on the length of time the power was interrupted, your system may require GPS initialization.

If initialization is not necessary, the system proceeds directly to the Startup Confirmation screen.
If the system fails to locate a sufficient number of satellites to locate your position within 10 minutes, the following screen is displayed.

If you are experiencing GPS reception problems:

- GPS P. 402
Startup Confirmation Screen

The Startup Confirmation screen is displayed when initialization has successfully completed. It is displayed every time you start your vehicle. Press OK to select OK to continue.

Map Matching

Map matching is the process of using the acquired GPS information to locate your position on the map screen. If you are on a mapped road, the name of the road is displayed along the bottom of the map screen when map matching is completed. Do not enter a destination until the road name is displayed.

The system may initially show your location on a different street (e.g., in urban areas where streets are close together), may show an incorrect elevation, or may delay the display of the vehicle position icon at intersections. This is normal; the system will correct itself while you drive.

Notice

The driver is responsible for safe operation of this vehicle. Use this system only when traffic conditions are permit. For further details, see your owner’s manual.

槭 : OK
System Limitations

GPS
The signals received from GPS satellites are extremely weak (less than a millionth of the strength of a local FM station) and require an unobstructed view of the sky. The GPS antenna is located in the roof. The signal reception can easily be interrupted or interfered with by trees, tall buildings, freeway/highway overpasses, tunnels, or overhead electrical power wires.
GPS is operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. For security reasons, there are certain inaccuracies built into GPS for which the navigation system must constantly compensate. This can cause occasional positioning errors of up to several hundred feet or tens of meters.

Address Calculation
The destination icon shows only the approximate location of a destination address. This occurs if the number of possible addresses is different from the number of actual addresses on a block. For example, the address 1425 on a 1400 block with 100 possible addresses (because it is followed by the 1500 block) will be shown a quarter of the way down the block by the system. If there are only 25 actual addresses on the block, the actual location of address 1425 would be at the end of the block.

Database
The digitized map database reflects conditions as they existed at various points in time before production. Accordingly, your database may contain inaccurate or incomplete data or information due to the passage of time, road construction, changing conditions, or other causes.
For example, some places/landmarks may be missing when you search the database because the name was misspelled, the place was improperly categorized, or a place/landmark is not yet in the database. This is also true for police stations, hospitals, and other public institutions. Do not rely on the navigation system if you need law enforcement or hospital services. Always check with local information sources.
In addition, the map database contains verified and unverified areas. Unverified streets may be missing from the map, in the wrong location, or have an incorrect name or address range. A message will warn you if your route includes unverified streets. Exercise additional caution when driving in unverified areas.
The database does not include, analyze, process, consider, or reflect any of the following categories of information:

- Neighborhood quality or safety
- Population density
- Availability or proximity of law enforcement
- Emergency, rescue, medical, or other assistance
- Construction work, zones, or hazards
- Road and lane closures
- Legal restrictions (such as vehicular type, weight, load, height, and speed restrictions)
- Road slope or grade
- Bridge height, width, weight, or other limits
- Traffic facilities safety
- Special events
- Pavement characteristics or conditions

Every effort has been made to verify that the database is accurate. The number of inaccuracies you experience increases the longer you go without obtaining an updated map database.

**Obtaining a Navigation Update** P. 405

We assume no liability for any incident that may result from an error in the program, or from changed conditions not noted above.
Client Assistance

Resolving Problems
If you run into a specific issue that you cannot resolve, consult the following help resources:
- For navigation system issues:
  Troubleshooting P. 384
- There are also FAQs available online at www.acuranavi.com (U.S.) or www.acuranavi.ca (Canada).
- For traffic-related issues:
  Traffic P. 386
- For reporting issues with the database or places/landmarks:
  Visiting Your Dealer P. 404
- Call Acura Client Relations.
  Acura Client Relations Contact Information P. 404

Acura Client Relations Contact Information
Acura Navi
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Acura Client Relations
Mail Stop 500-2N-7E
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Telephone: (800) 382-2238

Honda Canada Inc.
Acura Client Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, L6C 0H9, ON
E-Mail: acura_cr@ch.honda.com
Telephone: (888) 9-ACURA-9
Hours: 8:00 am to 7:30 pm
Monday to Friday (Eastern time)

Visiting Your Dealer
If you have a question that you cannot resolve using the available help resources, you can consult a dealer. Please identify the specific issue (e.g., error occurs when you enter a specific address, when driving on a certain road, or just when it’s cold) so that the service technician can refer the issue to the factory so that a solution can be found. Be patient, the service technician may be unfamiliar with your specific issue.
Map Coverage
The navigation system provides map coverage for the United States, Canada, Puerto Rico, and Mexico. The map coverage consists of accurately mapped (verified) metropolitan areas and a less accurate (unverified) rural database. Note that unverified areas are constantly being reviewed and converted to verified areas each year.
This screen is an example.

To find navigation system update information:
1. Visit the website.
2. Enter your vehicle model and model year.
3. Click Map Coverage to display a list of verified coverage areas on the most recent update.
4. Click Map Coverage Details to display a PDF document with a full listing of all coverage areas.

Adobe Reader® is required for viewing and printing the Portable Document Format (PDF) documents. To download the latest version of Adobe Reader, visit http://get.adobe.com/reader/.

Obtaining a Navigation Update
Acura is continually expanding the scope of the navigation system. Navigation system software upgrades may be made available periodically, usually in the fall of each year.
To purchase an update:
1. Obtain your vehicle’s VIN number and the System/Device Information.
2. Call the Acura Navigation Disc Fulfillment Center at (888) 549-3798, or order online at www.acuranavi.com (U.S.) or www.acuranavi.ca (Canada).
An update is not available from a dealer. However, the dealer may assist you in obtaining one for you out of courtesy. There is no program for free updates.
Traffic Information
Continuously updated traffic information is available in certain areas across the lower 48 U.S. states, Hawaii, and some cities in Canada.

**U.S. models**
Visit [automobiles.honda.com/traffic](http://automobiles.honda.com/traffic) for a complete listing of coverage areas and other information.

**Canadian models**
To find traffic information:
2. Select Real-Time Traffic on the MDX.
3. Click AcuraLink Real-Time Traffic.

Operation in Alaska, Hawaii, Canada, Puerto Rico, and Mexico

**Map Coverage**
All roads displayed on the map screens are verified roads. Information in this manual relating to “unverified” roads or areas is not applicable.

**Address and Place Entry Screens**
Entering a destination address or place/landmark on another island may result in a screen caution message. This is because there are no ferry routes between islands in the database.

**Puerto Rico and Mexico**
If Street Name Guidance is set to On, the street names will not be read out by voice guidance. This may change in a future data update.
Legal Information

Copyrights

- Infogroup-Data: Certain business data provided by Infogroup © 2011, All Rights Reserved.
- EXIT-Data: © ZENRIN CO., LTD. 2011. All rights reserved.
- Building footprint: © ZENRIN CO., LTD. 2011. All rights reserved.
- Junction View Data: © ZENRIN USA, INC. 2011. All rights reserved.
- Brand icon: The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

User Agreements

- Navigation System User Agreement

In using this HDD “Satellite Linked Navigation System” (the “HDD”), which includes HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD. software, ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC. software, and Here database contents (hereinafter referred to as “Licensors”), you are bound by the terms and conditions set forth below. By using your copy of the HDD, you have expressed your Agreement to the terms and conditions of this Agreement. You should, therefore, make sure that you read and understand the following provisions. If for any reason you do not wish to be bound by the terms of this Agreement, please return the HDD to your dealer.

- The HDD may not be copied, duplicated, or otherwise modified, in whole or in part, without the express written permission of the Licensors.
- The HDD may not be transferred or sublicensed to any third party for profit, rent or loan, or licensed for reuse in any manner.
- The HDD may not be decompiled, reverse engineered or otherwise disassembled, in whole or in part.
- The HDD may not be used in a network or by any other manner of simultaneous use in multiple systems.
- The HDD is intended solely for personal use (or internal use where the end-user is a business) by the consumer. The HDD is not to be used for commercial purposes.
- The Licensors do not guarantee to the client that the functions included in the HDD meet the specific objectives of the user.
- Licensor shall not be responsible for any damages caused by the use of the HDD to the actual user or to any third party.
- The warranty on the HDD shall not extend to an exchange or refund due to misspelling, omission of letters, or any other cosmetic discrepancy in the contents of the HDD.
- The right to use the HDD shall expire either when the user destroys the HDD or software, or when any of the terms of this Agreement are violated and the Licensors exercise the option to revoke the license to use the HDD or software.
The terms and conditions hereof apply to all subsequent users and owners as well as to the original purchaser.

The logos of oil companies, hotels, convenience stores, and other businesses are displayed for your information and convenience, and in no way imply any sponsorship, approval or endorsement of these companies, or their products. The logos are trademarks of their respective owners.

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners.

The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

The user shall indemnify and save harmless the Licensors, and their officers, employees and agents, from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expense, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the HDD or software.

Use, duplication, or disclosure of this HDD by or on behalf of the United States government is subject to “Restricted Rights” as set forth at FAR 52.227-14, -19 or DFARS 252.227-7013, as applicable. Manufacturers are the Licensors, including HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD., 2-1-1 Minami Aoyama Minato-Ku Tokyo 107-8556 JAPAN., Alpine Electronics, Inc., 20-1 Yoshima Kogyodanchi, Iwaki, Fukushima 970-1192 JAPAN., Here Corporation, 425 W Randolph St. Chicago, IL 60606, USA.

The user shall indemnify and save harmless the Licensors, and their officers, employees and agents, from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expense, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the HDD or software.

Use, duplication, or disclosure of this HDD by or on behalf of the United States government is subject to “Restricted Rights” as set forth at FAR 52.227-14, -19 or DFARS 252.227-7013, as applicable. Manufacturers are the Licensors, including HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD., 2-1-1 Minami Aoyama Minato-Ku Tokyo 107-8556 JAPAN., Alpine Electronics, Inc., 20-1 Yoshima Kogyodanchi, Iwaki, Fukushima 970-1192 JAPAN., Here Corporation, 425 W Randolph St. Chicago, IL 60606, USA.

The user shall indemnify and save harmless the Licensors, and their officers, employees and agents, from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expense, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the HDD or software.

Use, duplication, or disclosure of this HDD by or on behalf of the United States government is subject to “Restricted Rights” as set forth at FAR 52.227-14, -19 or DFARS 252.227-7013, as applicable. Manufacturers are the Licensors, including HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD., 2-1-1 Minami Aoyama Minato-Ku Tokyo 107-8556 JAPAN., Alpine Electronics, Inc., 20-1 Yoshima Kogyodanchi, Iwaki, Fukushima 970-1192 JAPAN., Here Corporation, 425 W Randolph St. Chicago, IL 60606, USA.
OF THE SOFTWARE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT. IF YOU HAVE RECEIVED ANY WARRANTIES REGARDING THE DEVICE OR SOFTWARE THOSE WARRANTIES DO NOT ORIGINATE FROM, AND ARE NOT BINDING ON, MS.

• NO LIABILITY FOR CERTAIN DAMAGES. EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S.$250.00).

• SPEECH RECOGNITION
If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither ALPINE nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

• LIMITATIONS ON REVERSE ENGINEERING, DECOMPILATION, AND DISASSEMBLY
You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

• ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE/SERVICES
The SOFTWARE may permit ALPINE, MS, Microsoft Corporation or their affiliates to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-base service components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE (“Supplemental Components”).

If MS, Microsoft Corporation or their affiliates make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

ALPINE, MS, Microsoft Corporation and their affiliates reserve the right to discontinue any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

• RECOVERY MEDIA
If SOFTWARE is provided by ALPINE on separate media and labeled “Recovery Media” you may use the Recovery Media solely to restore or reinstall the SOFTWARE originally installed on the DEVICE.

• UPGRADES
If the SOFTWARE is provided by ALPINE separate from the DEVICE on separate media or via web download or other means, and is labeled “For Upgrade Purposes Only” you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the

Continued
DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

- **TERMINATION**
  Without prejudice to any other rights, ALPINE or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA. In such event, you must destroy all copies of the SOFTWARE and all of its component parts.

- **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS**
  All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets," incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

- **TRADEMARKS**
  This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of ALPINE MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates or suppliers.

- **PRODUCT SUPPORT**
  Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to ALPINE support number provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact ALPINE for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

- **SOFTWARE TRANSFER ALLOWED BUT WITH RESTRICTIONS**
  You may permanently transfer rights under this EULA only as part of a permanent sale or transfer of the Device, and only if the recipient agrees to this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must also include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **EXPORT RESTRICTIONS**
  You acknowledge that SOFTWARE is of US-origin. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and country destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information on exporting the SOFTWARE, see [http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/](http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/).
Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, visit www.gracenote.com.

When music is recorded to the HDD from a CD, information such as the recording artist and track name are retrieved from the Gracenote Database and displayed (when available). Gracenote may not contain information for all albums. Gracenote is an internet-based music recognition service that allows artist, album, and track information from CDs to display on the HDD. Gracenote users are allowed 4 free updates a year. More information about Gracenote, its features, and downloads are available at www.honda.com (in U.S.) or www.honda.ca (in Canada).

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the “Powered by Gracenote” logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote® END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions or this application or device. You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only.

You agree not to assign, copy, transfer, or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN. You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce
its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name. The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service. The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you “AS IS.” Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

**GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NONINFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.**

copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote

---

**As required by the FCC**

1. This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and Canadian RSS-210/RSSGen. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

2. The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance may void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

3. This product emits radio frequency energy, but the radiated output power of this device is far below the FCC and IC radio frequency exposure limits. This equipment complies with FCC and IC RF radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. Nevertheless, the device should be used in such a manner that the potential for human contact with the antenna during normal operation is minimized.
Voice Commands

Voice Commands .................................. 414
Voice Portal Screen .............................. 414
Navigation Commands .......................... 415
Useful Commands ................................ 416
Phone Commands................................ 416
Audio Commands ................................. 417
On Screen Commands ............................ 417
Music Search Commands ....................... 417
General Commands ............................... 418
Climate Control Commands ................. 418
List of Categories ............................... 418
Voice Commands

Voice Portal Screen

When the (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.

For a complete list of commands, say "Voice Help" after the beep or select Voice Help.

You can see the list of commands in Voice Info on the Info menu screen. Select Info, then select Voice Commands.

*1: U.S. models only

### Phone Call
This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the Phone call command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- Call <Your Contact Name>
- Call <Phone Number>
- Dial by Number
- Redial
- Call History

### Music Search
This can be only used when the iPod or HDD device is connected.

### Voice Help
You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- Navigation Commands
- Useful Commands
- Phone Commands
- Audio Commands
- On Screen Commands
- Music Search Commands
- General Commands
- Climate Control Commands
- All Commands
- Voice Settings
- Getting Started

### Navigation
The screen changes the navigation screen.

- Address (English only)*1
- Place Name (English only)*1
- Find Nearest POI Category
- Go Home
- Previous Destination
- Address Book
- Place Phone Number
### Voice Commands

#### Audio

When the system recognizes the Audio command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

- **Audio On**
- **Audio Off**
- FM
- AM
- SXM
- Disc
- HDD
- USB
- iPod
- Bluetooth® Audio
- Pandora®
- Aha
- AUX

**Audio Commands** P. 417

#### Climate Control

The screen changes the climate control screen.

**Climate Control Commands** P. 418

*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

* Not available on all models

#### Navigation Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the navigation.

#### General Commands

- **What time is it?**
- **What is today’s date?**
- **Voice help** (displays commands for current screen)

#### Find Place Commands

**Find nearest (specify place):**
- Fuel and auto
- Acura dealers
- Honda dealers
- Gas station
- Hydrogen station
- Auto parts & electronics
- Auto repair & maintenance
- Car wash & detailing
- Motorcycle dealers
- Other car dealers
- Roadside assistance
- ATM and bank
- ATM
- Bank

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the navigation.

**Check cashing**
**Currency exchange**
**Community**
**Business**
**City hall**
**Civic center**
**Convention center**
**Court house**
**Higher education**
**Library**
**Post office**
**School**
**Emergency room**
**Hospital**
**Police station**
**Veterinarian**
**Lodging**
**Bed & breakfast**
**Hotel**
**Resort**
**Recreation**
**Amusement park**
**Golf course**
**Historical monument**
**Marina**
**Movie theater**
**Museum**
**Park**

* Not available on all models
Voice Commands

Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.

Call <Your Contact Name>
Call <Phone Number>
What time is it?
What is today’s date?

Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

Call <Your Contact Name>
Call <Phone Number>
Call by number
Call by name

NOTE:
Contacts that are imported from your phone to the vehicle are all made available by voice.

Performing arts
Sports complex
Tourist attraction
Restaurant
American restaurant
Californian restaurant
Chinese restaurant
Coffee shop
Continental restaurant
Fast food
French restaurant
German restaurant
Greek restaurant
Indian restaurant
Italian restaurant
Japanese restaurant
Korean restaurant
Mexican restaurant
Pizza
Seafood restaurant
Thai restaurant
Vegetarian restaurant
Vietnamese restaurant
Other restaurant
Shopping
Accessory store
Book store
Clothing store
Grocery store
Home improvement store
Mall
Office supply store
Pharmacy
Pet food store
Sewing store
Shoe store
Sporting goods store
Toy store
Travel center
Airport
Automobile club
Bus station
Camping
Commuter rail station
Ferry terminal
Named place
Park & ride
Parking garage
Parking lot
Rental car agency
Rest area
Ski area
Tourist information
Train station
Travel agency
Truck stop
### Audio Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

- **Radio FM Commands**
  - *Radio tune to* <87.7-107.9> FM
  - *Radio FM preset* <1-12>

- **Radio AM Commands**
  - *Radio tune to* <530-1710> AM
  - *Radio AM preset* <1-6>

- **Radio SXM Commands**
  - *Radio SXM channel* <1-999>
  - *Radio SXM preset* <1-12>

- **Disc Commands**
  - *Disc play*
  - *Disc play track* <1-30>

- **HDD Commands**
  - *HDD play*
  - *HDD play track* <1-30>

- **iPod Commands**
  - *iPod play*
  - *iPod play track* <1-30>

- **USB Commands**
  - *USB play*
  - *USB play track* <1-30>

- **Bluetooth® Audio Commands**
  - *Bluetooth® audio play*
  
  **NOTE:**
  Bluetooth® Audio commands may not work on some phones or Bluetooth® Audio devices.

- **Pandora Commands**
  - *Pandora play*

- **Aha Commands**
  - *Aha radio play*

- **AUX Commands**
  - *AUX play*

- **USB Commands**
  - *USB play track* <1-30>

### On Screen Commands

The system accepts the voice command operation of the voice recognition screen.

### Music Search Commands

The system accepts these commands on the Music Search screen.

#### Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your HDD or iPod device using your voice. To activate this mode, you must push the talk switch and say: "Music search".

#### Song By Voice Commands

- *Music search*
- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What’s playing?*
- *Who’s playing?*
- *What album is this?*

---

* Not available on all models
Voice Commands

Play Commands
- Play artist <Name>
- Play album <Name>
- Play song <Name>
- Play composer <Name>
- Play genre <Name>
- Play playlist <Name>

List Commands
- List artist <Name>
- List album <Name>
- List composer <Name>
- List genre <Name>
- List playlist <Name>

General Commands
- What time is it?
- What is today's date?

Climate Control Commands
The system accepts these commands on the Climate control screen.
- Climate Control Automatic
- Climate Control On*1
- Climate Control Off*1
- Air conditioner On*1
- Air conditioner Off*1
- Defrost On*1
- Defrost Off*1
- Vent
- Dash and Floor
- Floor Vents
- Floor and Defrost
- Fan Speed Up
- Fan Speed Down
- Fan Speed <1-7>
- Temperature Up
- Temperature Down
- Temperature Max Heat
- Temperature Max Cool
- Temperature <57-87> Degrees (U.S.)
- Temperature <18-32> Degrees (Canada)

*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

List of Categories
The system accepts these commands (POI category name) on the dedicated screen.
- Fuel/Auto
- ATM/Bank
- Community
- Emergency
- Lodging
- Recreation
- Restaurant
- Shopping
- Travel
# Index

## Symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🎯</td>
<td>(Display Mode) Button</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎯</td>
<td>(Hang-Up/Back) Button</td>
<td>6, 24, 266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎯</td>
<td>(Pick-Up) Button</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>(Talk) Button</td>
<td>6, 24, 266</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Numbers

3D Angle Adjustment | 79

**A**

- Acura Client Relations | 404
- AcuraLink Message | 319
- AcuraLink Subscription Status | 324
- AcuraLink® | 314
- Address | 128
  - Address Book | 41
  - Avoided Area | 62
- Address Book
  - Editing Address Book | 41
  - Setting Destination | 135
- Address Book PIN | 49
- Aha™ Radio | 398
- Aha™ Radio Menu | 254
- Audio
  - On Demand Multi-Use Display™ | 5
  - Remote Control | 188
  - Settings | 190
  - Voice Commands List | 417
- Audio Menu
  - Bluetooth® Audio | 262
- Disc | 220
- FM/AM Radio | 194
- HDD | 227
- Internet Radio | 251
- iPod® | 239
- SiriusXM® Radio | 200
- USB Flash drive | 256
- Audio System
  - Theft Protection | 185
  - USB Port | 183
- Auto Door Locking/Unlocking
  - Customize | 109
- AUX
  - Auxiliary Input Jack | 185
- Avoid Streets | 176
- Avoided Area | 62

**B**

- Black Level | 28
- Bluetooth® Audio
  - Playing | 262
- Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® | 266
- Importing Phonebook Data | 275
- Making a Call | 292
- Pairing a Phone | 269
- Phone Settings | 287
- Receiving a Call | 298
- Setting Up Speed Dialing | 276
- Brightness | 28

**C**

- Calculating the Route | 151
- Calendar | 350
- Call History | 296
- Cancel Route | 169
- Category
  - Address Book | 41
  - Setting Destination | 137
- Category History | 51
- Change Province | 129
- Change State | 129
- Changing Your Destination | 177
- Changing Your Route | 168
- City | 131
- Client Assistance | 404
- Clock Adjustment | 30
- Color | 75
- Continue Trip | 180
- Contrast | 28
- Coordinate | 150
- Correct Vehicle Position | 88
- Current Location | 81
- Current Position
  - Address Book | 41
  - Map Input | 148
- Customized Features | 90

**D**

- Data Reset | 123
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Day Mode</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching Display Mode</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Tracking</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination List</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Waypoint</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detour</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dial</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directions</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disc</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Settings</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Tracking</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download POI</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Category</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Importing Category</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Destination</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving to Your Destination</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Go Home</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit POI Search Radius Along Route</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER Button</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entering a Destination</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Messages</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aha™ Radio</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD Player</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard Disc Drive (HDD) Audio</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPod/USB Flash Drive</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation System</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandora®</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated Time</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Info</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FM/AM Radio</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preset Memory</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folder List</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disc</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB Flash Drive</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go Home</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go Home PIN</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gracenote Info. Update</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance (Navi Settings)</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance Mode</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance Point</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDD</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Traffic Flow</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Address</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoided Area</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Destination</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map (Navi Settings)</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Data Update</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking Version</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtaining Update Data</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Input</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoided Area</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Destination</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance (Navi Settings)</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance Mode</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance Point</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Menu</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Screen</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing View</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icon</td>
<td>9, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MENU Button</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Route</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Entering a Destination ........................................ 126
Microphone ................................................... 266
Multi-View Rear Camera .................................... 353
Music Search
  HDD ........................................................... 232
  How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC) ... 224
  iPod .......................................................... 245
  Song By Voice ............................................ 247
  USB .......................................................... 261

N
  NAV Button .................................................. 11, 65
  Navigation Menu (Destination) ....................... 126
  Navigation Menu (Route Option) ................... 168
  Night Mode
    Color ....................................................... 75
    Switching Display Mode ................................ 76
  Non-map Screens ......................................... 68

O
  On Demand Multi-Use Display™
    Basic Operation ......................................... 5
    Customizing Audio Source ................................ 187
    Screen Settings .......................................... 89
    Shortcuts .................................................. 46, 186, 279
    Sound ...................................................... 193

P
  Pairing a Phone .......................................... 269

  Pandora® .................................................. 252
  Personal Information ...................................... 40
  PHONE Button ............................................ 266
  Phone Settings ............................................ 287
  Phonebook
    Importing ................................................ 275
    Making a Call .......................................... 293
  PIN Numbers .............................................. 49
  Place Category
    Address Book ............................................ 41
    Setting Destination .................................... 137
  Place Name
    Address Book ............................................ 41
    Setting Destination ..................................... 141
  Place Phone Number
    Address Book ............................................ 41
    Setting Destination ..................................... 144
  Postal Code .............................................. 130
  Power Distribution Monitor ......................... 347
  Previous Destinations
    Address Book ............................................ 41
    Deleting .................................................. 50
    Setting Destination .................................... 136

R
  Radio
    FM/AM ...................................................... 194
    SiriusXM® ............................................... 200
  Random
    Disc ......................................................... 222
    HDD ......................................................... 230
    USB Flash Drive ........................................ 259
  Rear Entertainment System ............................. 16, 325
  Auxiliary Console Panel .................................. 326
  Front Control Panel Operation ....................... 338
  HDMI® Input Jack ........................................ 327
  Playable Discs ............................................ 328
  Rear Control Panel Operation ....................... 329
  Wireless Headphones .................................... 342
  Rearview Camera ......................................... 353
  Repeat
    Disc ......................................................... 222
    HDD ......................................................... 230
    iPod ........................................................ 243
    USB Flash Drive ......................................... 259
  Resuming Your Trip ..................................... 180
  Roadside Assistance .................................... 307
  Route Preference ........................................ 56
  Routing ..................................................... 55

S
  Scan
    Disc ......................................................... 222
    FM/AM Radio .............................................. 198, 199
    HDD ......................................................... 230
    SiriusXM® Radio .......................................... 215
    USB Flash Drive ......................................... 259
  Scenic Route ............................................. 146
  Schedule
    Calendar ................................................... 350
  Search Along .............................................. 171
  Search Around ............................................ 171
  Search by Name .......................................... 138
Search by name
   Place Category ....................................... 137
Search Nearby ........................................... 177
Security PIN Code ........................................... 400
SETTINGS Button ........................................... 4
Show Icon on Map ........................................... 73
Shuffle
   iPod ......................................................... 243
Siri Eyes Free ............................................... 27
SiriusXM® Radio
   Playing ....................................................... 200
   Preset Memory ........................................... 203
   Replay Function ........................................... 205
   Settings ...................................................... 190
   SportsFlash™ Alert ........................................ 209
Song By Voice™
   Searching Music ........................................... 247
   Setting ...................................................... 246
Sort by Distance to Travel .................................. 137
Sound and Beep Settings ...................................... 29
Sound Setup ................................................... 193
Speed Dial
   Making a Call .............................................. 297
   Registering ................................................... 277
Start-up ......................................................... 22
Steering Wheel Controls .................................... 188
Straight Line Guide .......................................... 80
Street .......................................................... 132
Street Name Guidance ....................................... 67
Surround View Camera ....................................... 355
System Device Information ................................... 351
System Initialization ......................................... 400
System Limitations ........................................... 402
T
   Text/E-mail Message ...................................... 300
   Traffic Incidents ........................................... 166
   Traffic List ................................................... 166
   Traffic Rerouting
      Auto Reroute ........................................... 165
      Navi Settings ............................................. 60
   Trip Computer ............................................. 346
   Troubleshooting ............................................ 18, 377, 384
U
   Unit Settings ................................................. 35
   Unverified Routing ......................................... 58
Update System Software
   Obtaining Update Data ...................................... 405
USB Flash Drive
   Connecting, Disconnecting ................................ 256
   Playing ........................................................ 256
   Voice Commands List ...................................... 417, 418
USB Port ......................................................... 183
Voice Commands
   Help .......................................................... 17
   Voice Commands List ...................................... 414
   Voice Control System ...................................... 24
Voice Control Operation
   Basic Operation ............................................. 6
   Voice Portal .................................................. 6
Voice Recognition Settings .................................... 26
Voice Tag
   Phonebook Phonetic Modification ....................... 282
   Registering a Voice Tag to a Speed Dial Entry ........ 277
Volume
   HFL Buttons ................................................... 266
   Map Menu ..................................................... 161
   Sound and Beep Settings ................................... 29
   Voice Recognition Settings ................................ 26
W
   Wallpaper Settings .......................................... 32
Waypoint
   Adding ........................................................ 170
   Editing ........................................................ 174
Z
   Zip Code ......................................................... 130